



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**2 Samuel**

**Version 56**

[en]

# Copyrights and Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2021-12-21

**Version:** 56

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2021-12-06

**Version:** 32

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2021-09-07

**Version:** 2.1.23

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2021-09-14

**Version:** 0.22

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2021-12-09

**Version:** 24

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2021-11-25

**Version:** 27

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2021 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](https://unfoldingword.org/utn)". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](https://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b>	<b>10</b>
2 Samuel	10
Introduction to 2 Samuel	11
2 Samuel 1	13
2 Samuel 2	41
2 Samuel 3	74
2 Samuel 4	114
2 Samuel 5	127
2 Samuel 6	153
2 Samuel 7	177
2 Samuel 8	207
2 Samuel 9	226
2 Samuel 10	240
2 Samuel 11	260
2 Samuel 12	288
2 Samuel 13	320
2 Samuel 14	360
2 Samuel 15	395
2 Samuel 16	433
2 Samuel 17	457
2 Samuel 18	487
2 Samuel 19	521
2 Samuel 20	565
2 Samuel 21	592
2 Samuel 22	615
2 Samuel 23	667
2 Samuel 24	707
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b>	<b>733</b>
Abstract Nouns	734
Active or Passive	736
Apostrophe	739
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	741
Background Information	744
Biblical Money	747
Biblical Weight	749
Direct and Indirect Quotations	751
Double Negatives	753
Doublet	755
Ellipsis	757
Euphemism	760
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	762
First, Second or Third Person	764
Forms of You	766
Fractions	767
Go and Come	769
Hendiadys	771
How to Translate Names	774
Hyperbole	778

Hypothetical Situations .....	782
Idiom .....	785
Introduction of a New Event .....	787
Introduction of New and Old Participants .....	790
Irony .....	793
Litotes .....	796
Merism .....	798
Metaphor .....	800
Metonymy .....	806
Nominal Adjectives .....	808
Numbers .....	810
Ordinal Numbers .....	813
Parallelism .....	816
Personification .....	819
Quotes within Quotes .....	821
Reflexive Pronouns .....	824
Rhetorical Question .....	827
Simile .....	830
Symbolic Action .....	833
Synecdoche .....	835
Textual Variants .....	837
Translate Unknowns .....	839
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words .....</b>	<b>842</b>
Abiathar .....	843
Abimelech .....	844
Abner .....	845
Absalom .....	846
Adam .....	847
Adonijah .....	848
adversary, enemy .....	849
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels .....	850
afflict, affliction, distress .....	851
alien, foreigner, sojourn .....	852
altar .....	853
Ammon, Ammonite .....	854
Amnon .....	855
Amorite .....	856
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather .....	857
anoint, anointed, anointing .....	859
appoint, appointed .....	860
Arabah .....	861
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh .....	862
Ashkelon .....	863
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community .....	864
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance .....	865
barley .....	866
Bathsheba .....	867
Beersheba .....	868
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief .....	869
Benaiah .....	872
Benjamin, Benjaminite .....	873
bind, bond, bound .....	874

bless, blessed, blessing .....	875
blood .....	877
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee .....	879
bread .....	880
bronze .....	881
brother .....	882
burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances .....	883
burnt offering, offering by fire .....	884
bury, buried, burial .....	885
call, call out .....	886
cedar, cedarwood .....	888
chariot, charioteers .....	889
cherub .....	890
chief, leader .....	891
children, child, offspring .....	892
clean, wash .....	894
comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted .....	896
command, commandment .....	897
condemn, condemned, condemnation .....	898
confirm, confirmation, legal .....	899
consecrate, consecrated, consecration .....	900
consume, devour .....	901
court, courtyard .....	902
covenant .....	903
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love .....	905
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox .....	906
cry, cry out, outcry .....	907
curse, cursed, cursing .....	908
curtain .....	910
cut off, cut down .....	911
darkness .....	912
David .....	913
deceive, lie, deception, illusions .....	915
declare, proclaim, announce .....	916
delight .....	917
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue .....	918
desert, wilderness .....	919
destroy, destruction, annihilate .....	920
devour .....	921
die, dead, deadly, death .....	922
dominion .....	924
donkey, mule .....	925
earth, land .....	926
Egypt, Egyptian .....	927
elder, older, old .....	928
Eleazar .....	929
ephod .....	930
Ephraim, Ephraimite .....	931
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever .....	932
evil, wicked, unpleasant .....	934
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins .....	936
exalt, exalted, exaltation .....	937

exile, exiled .....	938
face, facial .....	939
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy .....	941
family, household .....	943
famine .....	944
fast, fasting .....	945
favor, favorable, favoritism .....	946
fear, afraid, frighten .....	947
feast, feasting .....	948
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot .....	949
firstborn .....	950
flock, herd .....	951
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out .....	952
Gad .....	953
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway .....	954
Geshur, Geshurites .....	955
Gibeon, Gibeonite .....	956
Gilead, Gileadite .....	957
Gilgal .....	958
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt ... ..	959
God .....	960
gold, golden .....	962
Goliath .....	963
good, right, pleasant, better, best .....	964
grace, gracious .....	966
grain offering .....	967
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place .....	968
hand .....	969
hang, hung .....	971
harp, harpist .....	972
harvest, reap .....	973
head .....	974
heart .....	975
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly .....	976
Hittite .....	978
Hivite .....	979
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred .....	980
honey, honeycomb .....	982
horse, warhorse, horseback .....	983
house of God, Yahweh's house .....	984
house, household .....	985
humble, humbled, humility .....	986
inherit, inheritance, heir .....	987
iniquity .....	989
innocent .....	990
Israel, Israelites .....	991
Jacob, Israel .....	993
Jebus, Jebusite .....	994
Jehoiada .....	995
Jehoshaphat .....	996
Jericho .....	997
Jerusalem .....	998

Jesse	1000
Joab	1001
Jordan River, Jordan	1002
Joseph (OT)	1003
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad	1004
Judah	1006
Judea, Judah	1007
judge, judgment	1008
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	1010
Kerethites	1012
king, kingship	1013
kingdom	1015
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1017
Levi, Levite	1019
life, live, living, alive	1020
lord, Lord, master, sir	1022
love, beloved	1024
Maacah	1026
mercy, merciful	1027
messenger	1029
might, mighty, mighty works	1030
miracle, wonder, sign	1031
Moab, Moabite	1033
mourn, mourner, weeping	1034
name	1035
Nathan	1036
nation	1037
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	1039
olive	1040
oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor, dominate	1041
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1042
people, people group	1043
persecute	1045
Philistines	1046
praise, praised, praiseworthy	1047
pray, prayer	1048
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1050
priest, priesthood	1052
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ...	1054
promise, promised	1055
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1056
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	1058
prostrate, bow down, worship	1059
proud, pride, prideful	1060
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished	1062
Rabbah	1064
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,	1065
reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation	1067
redeem, redeemer, redemption	1068
reign, rule	1069
rest, rested, restless	1070
restore, restoration	1071

return, turn back .....	1072
reward, prize, deserve .....	1073
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ... ..	1074
Rimmon .....	1076
robe, robed .....	1077
sackcloth .....	1078
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering .....	1079
Saul (OT) .....	1081
save, saved, safe, salvation .....	1082
scribe .....	1084
seed, semen .....	1085
seek, search, look for .....	1086
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women .....	1087
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach .....	1090
silver .....	1092
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning .....	1093
Solomon .....	1095
son .....	1096
spirit, wind, breath .....	1098
statute .....	1100
strength, strengthen, strong .....	1101
sword, swordsmen .....	1103
tabernacle .....	1104
Tamar .....	1105
temple, house, house of God .....	1106
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence .....	1108
thresh .....	1110
throne, enthroned .....	1111
tongue, language .....	1112
tremble, stagger, shake .....	1113
tribe, tribal, tribesmen .....	1114
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity .....	1115
true, truth .....	1116
trumpet, trumpeters .....	1118
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness .....	1119
tunic .....	1120
Tyre, Tyrians .....	1121
Uriah .....	1122
virgin, virginity .....	1123
voice .....	1124
vow .....	1125
walk, walked .....	1126
watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware .....	1127
wheat .....	1128
wine, wineskin, new wine .....	1129
wise men, advisor .....	1130
wise, wisdom .....	1131
work, works, deeds .....	1132
wrath, fury .....	1133
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful .....	1134
Yahweh .....	1135
Zadok .....	1137



Zion, Mount Zion .....	1138
<b>Contributors</b> .....	<b>1139</b>
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors .....	1139
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors .....	1145
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors .....	1146
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors .....	1147



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

## **2 Samuel**

## Introduction to 2 Samuel

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of 2 Samuel

The first years of David's reign (1:1–7:29)  
 Saul is killed; David is kind to Ishbosheth (1:1–4:12)  
 David defeats the Philistines (5:1–25)  
 Victories, the ark, the house of God (6:1–7:29)  
 David extends his rule to all the Promised Land (8:1–10:19)  
 David's sin with Bathsheba (11:1–12:31)  
 Amnon and Tamar; Absalom kills Amnon (13:1–14:33)  
 The later years of David's reign (15:1–24:25)  
 Absalom rebels and is killed (15:1–18:33)  
 David's kingdom restored (19:1–20:26)  
 Famine and warfare (21:1–14)  
 David's song of praise (22:1–23:7)  
 David's mighty men (23:8–39)  
 Yahweh judges David's sin of numbering the people; the plague stopped (24:1–25)

#### What is the Book of 2 Samuel about?

This book is about David ruling as king over Israel. He first ruled over the tribe of Judah for seven years. Then the other eleven tribes agreed to have him become their king. He ruled over all Israel for thirty-three years.

Throughout this time, David led his army to fight foreign enemies who attacked Israel. However, he struggled the most against someone in his own family. Absalom, his son, rebelled and fought against him ([2 Samuel 13-19](#)).

The Book of 2 Samuel also tells about when David sinned greatly. He slept with Bathsheba, the wife of Uriah the Hittite. When she became pregnant, David arranged for Uriah to be killed in battle. David and all Israel suffered much because of David's sin. However, the writer also tells of Yahweh repeatedly showing David grace and love after David repented of his sin.

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators can use the traditional title "2 Samuel," or "Second Samuel." Or translators may consider a clearer title such as "The Second Book about Samuel, Saul, and David." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### What was the purpose of the Book of 2 Samuel?

The Book of 2 Samuel begins where 1 Samuel ended. The writer continues to show how the tribes of Israel unite under the first kings of Israel. The Book of 2 Samuel centers around David as the king Yahweh chose to lead Israel.

#### Who wrote the Book of 2 Samuel?

It is uncertain who wrote 2 Samuel. It may have been someone alive soon after King Solomon died. When Solomon died, the kingdom of Israel split into two kingdoms. The author probably lived in the southern kingdom of Judah. A descendant of David continued to rule over the southern kingdom. The author may have written 2 Samuel to defend David's right to be king. This would prove that David's descendant was the rightful king of God's people.

## Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

### What covenant had its beginning in the Book of 2 Samuel?

In 2 Samuel 7, Yahweh made a covenant with David. God promised to make a descendant of David rule forever over Israel. Christians believe that Jesus Christ fulfills this covenant. Jesus was a descendant of David. Jesus is the true “anointed one,” the person God chose to be king forever. (See: [covenant](#))

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### Why does the book refer to someone being addressed indirectly?

David frequently refers to himself as “your servant” when he speaks to King Saul. He also calls Saul “my master.” Indirectly addressing a person in this way can be difficult to translate. It is intended to show that the speaker submits to the one being addressed. English sometimes uses the address “sir” or “ma’am” in this way.

### Can I translate this book before 1 Samuel?

The Book of 1 Samuel should be translated before 2 Samuel, since 2 Samuel continues from where 1 Samuel ends.

### How is the name “Israel” used in the Bible?

The name “Israel” is used in many different ways in the Bible. Jacob was the son of Isaac. God changed his name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob became a nation also called Israel. Eventually, the nation of Israel split into two kingdoms. The northern kingdom was named Israel. The southern kingdom was named Judah. (See: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#))

2 Samuel speaks of both the northern kingdom of Israel and the whole nation of Israel as “Israel.” However, these references appear in the narrative long before the two kingdoms split apart. It seems clear that the references to Israel and Judah indicate that the author wrote 2 Samuel at a time after the kingdoms split. (See: [2 Samuel 2:10](#); [2 Samuel 3:10](#); [2 Samuel 5:5](#); [2 Samuel 11:11](#); [2 Samuel 12:8](#); [2 Samuel 19:42-43](#); [2 Samuel 21:2](#); [2 Samuel 24:1](#)).

## 2 Samuel 1

### 2 Samuel 1 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetic song in 1:19-27.

This chapter continues the material from 1 Samuel.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### David's funeral song

David praised Saul and Jonathan as great warriors and Jonathan as his dearest friend.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Synecdoche

David used two figures of speech to express that Jonathan and Saul were great warriors: "the bow of Jonathan did not turn back, and the sword of Saul did not return empty." (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## 2 Samuel 1:1

### Ziklag

This is the name of a city in the southern part of Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [returned](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And it happened after the death of [Saul](#), and David [returned](#) from attacking the Amalekites, that [David](#) remained in Ziklag two days.

## 2 Samuel 1:2

### On the third day

“After three days” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### with his clothes torn and with dirt on his head

In this culture, tearing one’s own clothes and putting dirt on one’s head was an act of mourning. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### he lay facedown on the ground and prostrated himself

This was an act of showing submission to David, who was now the king of Israel. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [his head](#)
- [David](#)
- [that he fell](#)
- [to the ground](#)
- [and prostrated himself](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And it happened on the third day, that behold, a man came from the camp, from with [Saul](#), and his clothes were torn and dirt was on [his head](#). And it happened when he came to [David](#) that [he fell to the ground and prostrated himself](#).

## 2 Samuel 1:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- I escaped
- of Israel

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And David said to him, "Where are you coming from?" And he said to him, "I escaped from the camp of Israel."



## 2 Samuel 1:4

### Many have fallen and many are dead

This could mean: (1) "Many were wounded and many were killed" or (2) "Many were wounded and killed."

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- The people
- the people
- and died
- Saul
- his son

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And David said to him, "What is the matter? Tell to me please." And He said that, "The people have fled from the battle, and also many from the people have fallen and died, and Saul and Jonathan his son are also dead."

## 2 Samuel 1:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- the young man
- do you know
- Saul
- his son

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And David said to the young man, the one who was reporting to him, "How do you know that Saul and Jonathan his son are dead?"

## 2 Samuel 1:6

### By chance I happened to be

This statement emphasizes that the man did not plan to meet Saul.

### Saul was leaning on his spear

This could mean: (1) Saul was weak and using the spear to support himself or (2) Saul was attempting to kill himself by falling on his own spear. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the young man](#)
- [Saul](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And [the young man](#), the one who was reporting to him, said, "Certainly I happened to be in the mountain of Gilboa, and behold, [Saul](#) was leaning on his spear, and behold, the chariots and the masters of the horses clung to him."

## 2 Samuel 1:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [And he called out](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> And Saul turned behind him and saw me. [And he called out](#) to me, and I said, 'Here I am.'

## 2 Samuel 1:8

**He said to me, 'Who are you?' I answered him, 'I am an Amalekite.'**

These direct quotations could be stated as indirect speech. Alternate translation: "He asked me who I was, and I told him that I am an Amalekite" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And he said to me, 'Who are you?' And I said to him, 'I am an Amalekite.'

## I am an Amalekite

These are the same people David just finishing attacking in [2 Samuel 1:1](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

• I

## 2 Samuel 1:9

### great suffering has taken hold of me

Saul's suffering is spoken of as something terrible that has grabbed hold of him. Alternate translation: "I am suffering terribly" (See: [Personification](#))

### life is still in me

This idiom means he is still alive. Alternate translation: "I am still alive" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [stand](#)
- [and kill me](#)
- [my life is](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And he said to me, 'Now [stand](#) over me [and kill me](#), for agony has grasped me, because [my life is](#) still wholly in me.'

## 2 Samuel 1:10

### he would not live after he had fallen

“he would die anyway”

### Translation Words - ULT

- and killed him
- I knew
- he would...live
- his head
- my lord

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> So I stood over him and killed him, because I knew that he would not live after his fall. And I took the crown that was on his head and the band that was on his arm, and I brought them here to my lord.”

## 2 Samuel 1:11

### David tore his clothes ... the men with him did the same

David and his men tore their clothes as a sign of mourning for the death of King Saul. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> And [David](#) seized his clothes and tore them, and also all the men who were with him.



## 2 Samuel 1:12

### for the people of Yahweh, and for the house of Israel

Both statements mean basically same thing. The word “house” is a metonym that represents the descendants of Israel. But, both “people” and “house” probably are a synecdoche representing the soldiers of Israel. Alternate translation: “for the Israelite soldiers” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And they mourned and wept [and fasted](#) until the evening for [Saul](#), and for Jonathan [his son](#), and for [the army of Yahweh](#), and for [the house of Israel](#) because they had fallen [by the sword](#).

### Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

### they had fallen by the sword

Here “fallen” is a polite way of referring to being killed. Also, “sword” represents a battle. This here means “had been killed.” Alternate translation: “they had died in battle” or “enemies had killed them in battle” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and fasted](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [his son](#)
- [the army of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [by the sword](#)

## 2 Samuel 1:13

### Where are you from?

The man had already stated that he is an Amalekite in [2 Samuel 1:8](#). David apparently asks the man to confirm this because of the serious judgment that David was going to pronounce on the man.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [the young man](#)
- [I am](#)
- [a son of](#)

### ULT

**13** And [David](#) said to [the young man](#), the one who was reporting to him, "Where are you from?" And he said, "[I am a son of](#) a man, a foreigner, an Amalekite."

## 2 Samuel 1:14

### Why were you not afraid to kill Yahweh's anointed ... hand?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke the man. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have feared Yahweh and not killed his anointed ... hand!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Yahweh's anointed king

This refers to Saul.

### with your own hand

This phrase refers to doing something yourself. Alternate translation: "yourself" or "personally" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [were you...afraid](#)
- [your hand](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And [David](#) said to him, "How [were you not afraid](#) to stretch out [your hand](#) to destroy the anointed one of [Yahweh](#)?"

## 2 Samuel 1:15

### struck him down

This idiom means “killed him.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [And...called out](#)
- [and he died](#)

### ULT

**15** And [David called out](#) to one of the young men and said, “Come near, fall upon him.” And he struck him, [and he died](#).

## 2 Samuel 1:16

### Your blood is on your head

Here “blood” is a metonym that implies “shed blood” and is associated with death. Here “your head” is a synecdoche referring to the man and means that he is responsible. Alternate translation: “You are responsible for your own death” or “You have caused your own death” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### ULT

**16** And [David](#) said to him, “[Your blood](#) is on [your head](#) because your mouth [has testified](#) against you saying, ‘I [myself](#) killed the anointed one of [Yahweh](#).’”

### your own mouth has testified against you

Here “your own mouth” refers to the man himself. Alternate translation: “you have testified against yourself” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Your blood](#)
- [your head](#)
- [has testified](#)
- [myself](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

## 2 Samuel 1:17

### General Information:

David sings a song of mourning for Saul and Jonathan.

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Saul
- his son

### ULT

**17** Then David sang this funeral song for Saul and for Jonathan his son.

## 2 Samuel 1:18

### Song of the Bow

This was the title of the song.

### which has been written in the Book of Jashar

This is background information added to tell the reader what happened to the song in the future. (See: [Background Information](#))

### the Book of Jashar

The word “Jashar” means “upright.” Alternate translation: “the Book of the Upright” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Judah](#)

#### ULT

**18** And he said to teach [the sons of Judah](#) the bow, behold, which has been written in the Book of the Upright. <sup>[1]</sup>

## 2 Samuel 1:19

### Your glory, Israel, is dead

“Your glory” refers to Saul. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the mighty

The phrase “the mighty” refers to both Saul and Jonathan. This nominal adjective is plural, and can be stated as “the mighty ones.” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### have fallen

The word “fallen” here means “died.” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [the mighty](#)

#### ULT

**19** “The beauty of [Israel](#) is slain on your high places! How [the mighty](#) have fallen!”



## 2 Samuel 1:20

### Do not tell it in Gath ... do not proclaim it in the streets of Ashkelon

These two phrases mean the same thing and are repeated as part of the poetry of the song. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Gath ... Ashkelon

Gath and Ashkelon are two of the Philistines' major cities. The Philistines killed Saul and Jonathan.

### so that the daughters of the Philistines may not rejoice ... so that the daughters of the uncircumcised may not celebrate

These two phrases mean the same thing and are repeated as part of the poetry of the song. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### the daughters of the uncircumcised

This phrase refers to people who do not follow Yahweh, such as the Philistines. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Ashkelon](#)
- [the Philistines](#)
- [rejoice](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Do not tell it in Gath, do not announce it in the streets of [Ashkelon](#), lest the daughters of [the Philistines rejoice](#), lest the daughters of the uncircumcised exult.

## 2 Samuel 1:21

### Mountains of Gilboa

David speaks directly to the “Mountains of Gilboa” as if they were listening to his song. (See: [Apostrophe](#))

### let there not be dew or rain on you

David curses the ground where King Saul died in the battle. This was out of reverence for Saul, who was God’s anointed king.

### the shield of the mighty was defiled

The “mighty” here refers to Saul. The shield was defiled because it fell on the ground, and because the king’s blood was shed on it. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### The shield of Saul is no longer anointed with oil

Saul’s shield was made of leather. To care for the shield, it was rubbed with oil. Alternate translation: “No one will care for Saul’s shield anymore”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [that give contributions](#)
- [the mighty](#)
- [Saul](#)

### ULT

**21** Mountains in Gilboa, let there not be dew and let there not be rain on you, nor fields [that give contributions](#), for there the shield of [the mighty](#) was defiled. The shield of [Saul](#) is not anointed with oil.

## 2 Samuel 1:22

**From the blood of those who have been killed,  
from the bodies of the mighty, the bow of  
Jonathan did not turn back, and the sword of  
Saul did not return empty**

Saul and Jonathan are shown here to have been fierce and valiant warriors. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### **the sword of Saul did not return empty**

Saul's sword is spoken of as if it were a living thing that could return on its own. Rather than return empty, it was carrying the blood of Saul's enemies that it killed. (See: [Personification](#) and [Litotes](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [the mighty](#)
- [and the sword of](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [did...return](#)

#### **ULT**

<sup>22</sup> From the blood of the slain, from the fat of [the mighty](#), the bow of Jonathan did not turn back, [and the sword of Saul](#) did not [return](#) empty.

## 2 Samuel 1:23

### in their death they were not separated

The phrase “were not separated” is used to emphasize that they were always together. Alternate translation: “even in death they were together”

### They were swifter than eagles, they were stronger than lions.

Saul and Jonathan were spoken of as if they were faster than eagles and stronger than lions. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [and in their death](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> [Saul](#) and Jonathan, the ones who were loved and the delightful ones in their life, [and in their death](#) they were not separated. They were swifter than eagles, they were mightier than lions.

## 2 Samuel 1:24

**who clothed you in scarlet as well as jewels,  
and who put ornaments of gold on your  
clothing**

“who provided you nice clothes and jewelry.” These two phrases share similar meanings that describe providing the women with expensive, attractive clothing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [gold](#)
- [your clothing](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Daughters of [Israel](#), weep for [Saul](#),  
the one who clothed you in scarlet, with  
luxuries, the one who put ornaments of  
[gold](#) on [your clothing](#).

## 2 Samuel 1:25

### How the mighty have fallen in the midst of the battle

This phrase is repeated in verse 27 to emphasize that Israel's best warriors are dead. Alternate translation: "The mighty men have died in battle"

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> How [the mighty](#) have fallen in the midst of the battle! Jonathan is slain on your high places.

### the mighty

Here "mighty" is plural and may refer to only Saul and Jonathan, or to all of the soldiers of Israel. Alternate translation: "the mighty warriors" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### have fallen

This is a polite way to say "have died." (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Jonathan is killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jonathan has died in battle" or "The enemy has killed Jonathan" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### on your high places

David continues to address this part of the song to the mountains of Gilboa as he started in [2 Samuel 1:21](#). (See: [Apostrophe](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the mighty](#)

## 2 Samuel 1:26

### my brother Jonathan

Here “brother” is used in the sense of a very close friend.

### Your love to me was wonderful, exceeding the love of women

Here “love” is used in the sense of friendship and loyalty. Jonathan’s loyalty to David was even greater than the loyalty a woman has for her husband and children.

### Translation Words - ULT

- my brother
- was wonderful

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> It is distressing to me concerning you, my brother Jonathan. You were very pleasant to me. Your love for me was wonderful, more than the love of women.

## 2 Samuel 1:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the mighty
- and...perished

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> How **the mighty** have fallen, and the weapons of war **perished!**"

1:18 <sup>[1]</sup>



## 2 Samuel 2

### 2 Samuel 2 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story of the civil war between Saul's son and David.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Civil war

There was a civil war in Israel. David was made king of Judah and Saul's uncle (Abner) made Saul's son (Ishbosheth) king of the rest of Israel. When they fought each other, Abner killed Joab's brother, but David's army was victorious.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical question

Abner finally stopped the battle with a rhetorical question to David's army. "Must the sword devour forever?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## 2 Samuel 2:1

### After this

“After David mourned the deaths of Saul and Jonathan in battle”

### go up to one of the cities of Judah

At this time David was in the city of Ziklag. David used the phrase “go up” because Ziklag was lower in elevation than Judah. Alternate translation: “travel to one of the cities of Judah”

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And it happened after this that David asked of Yahweh saying, “Should I go up into one of the cities of Judah?” And Yahweh said to him, “Go up.” Then David said, “Where should I go?” And he said, “To Hebron.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Judah

## 2 Samuel 2:2

### David went up with his two wives

At this time David was in the city of Ziklag. The narrator uses the phrase “went up” because Ziklag was lower in elevation than Hebron. Alternate translation: “David traveled to Hebron with his two wives”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So [David](#) went up there and with his two wives, Ahinoam the Jezreelite, and Abigail, the wife of Nabal the Carmelite.

## 2 Samuel 2:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- with his household

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And David brought up his men who were with him, each man with his household, and they lived in the cities of Hebron,.

## 2 Samuel 2:4

### anointed David king

In this symbolic act, they poured oil on David's head to show that he was selected to be the king. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### the house of Judah

Here "house" is used in the sense of "tribe." Alternate translation: "the tribe of Judah"

### Jabesh Gilead

This is the name of a town in the region of Gilead. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [David](#)
- [as king](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [buried](#)
- [Saul](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And the men of [Judah](#) came, and there they anointed [David as king](#) over [the house of Judah](#). And they told to David saying, "The men of Jabesh Gilead, who [buried Saul](#)."

## 2 Samuel 2:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- messengers
- Blessed are
- by Yahweh
- your master
- with Saul

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So David sent messengers to the men of Jabesh Gilead and said to them, "Blessed are you by Yahweh, because you did this kindness with your master, with Saul, and have buried him."

## 2 Samuel 2:6

### General Information:

David speaks to the people of Jabesh Gilead.

### this thing

They buried Saul.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- kindness
- and faithfulness
- I

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And now may Yahweh do to you kindness and faithfulness. And also I will do for you this good because you have done this thing.

## 2 Samuel 2:7

### let your hands be strong

Here “hands” refers to the people of Jabesh Gilead. Alternate translation: “be strong” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### anointed me king

In this symbolic act, they poured oil on David’s head to show that he was selected to be the king. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- your hands
- let...be strong
- as sons of
- might
- Saul
- your master
- the house of
- Judah
- for king

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So now, let [your hands be strong](#); and be [as sons of might](#) for [Saul your master](#) is dead, and also [the house of Judah](#) has anointed me [for king](#) over them.”



## 2 Samuel 2:8

### Ner ... Ishbosheth

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Mahanaim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [And Abner](#)
- [son of](#)
- [son of \(2\)](#)
- [commander of](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [and brought him over to](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> [And Abner son of Ner, commander of Saul's army, took Ishbosheth son of Saul and brought him over to Mahanaim.](#)

## 2 Samuel 2:9

### Gilead ... Jezreel

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [And he made him king](#)
- [Gilead](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [And he made him king](#) over [Gilead](#),  
and over the Ashurites, and over Jezreel,  
and over [Ephraim](#), and over [Benjamin](#),  
and over all [Israel](#).

## 2 Samuel 2:10

### the house of Judah followed David

Obedying David's rule is spoken of as "following" him. Alternate translation: "the tribe of Judah obeyed David as their king" (See: [Idiom](#))

### house of Judah

Here "house" is used to mean "tribe."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [old](#)
- [son of \(2\)](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

**10** Ishbosheth [son of Saul](#), was forty years [old](#) when he began to reign over [Israel](#), and he reigned two years. But [the house of Judah](#) was behind [David](#).

## 2 Samuel 2:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- king
- the house of
- Judah

### ULT

**11** And the number of the days that David was king in Hebron over the house of Judah was seven years and six months.

## 2 Samuel 2:12

### Abner ... Ner ... Ishbosheth ... Saul

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Abner
- son of
- son of (2)
- and the servants of
- Saul
- And...went out
- to Gibeon

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And Abner son of Ner, and the servants of Ishbosheth son of Saul, went out from Mahanaim to Gibeon.

## 2 Samuel 2:13

### Zeruiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [And Joab](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [and the servants of](#)
- [David](#)
- [went out](#)
- [Gibeon](#)

### ULT

**13** [And Joab the son of Zeruiah, and the servants of David, went out](#) and met them by the pool of [Gibeon](#); and they sat down together, these by the pool on this side, and these by the pool on this side.

## 2 Samuel 2:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Abner
- Joab
- Joab
- the young men

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And Abner said to Joab, "Now let the young men arise and compete before us." And Joab said, "Let them arise."

## 2 Samuel 2:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- and passed by
- for Benjamin
- son of
- Saul
- David

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Then they arose and passed by, by number, twelve for Benjamin and Ishbosheth son of Saul, and twelve from the servants of David.



## 2 Samuel 2:16

### they fell down together

This is a polite way of saying they died. Alternate translation: “they both died” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Helkath Hazzurim

This is a name given to remind people what happened there. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by the head](#)
- [and his sword](#)
- [and they fell down](#)
- [Therefore...was called](#)

### ULT

**16** And each man grasped his opponent [by the head and his sword](#) into the side of his opponent, [and they fell down](#) together. [Therefore](#) that place [was called](#) “Helkath Hazzurim,” or “Field of Swords,” which is in Gibeon.

## 2 Samuel 2:17

### The battle was very severe that day

It may be helpful to explicitly state that this was the large battle that followed the contest of the young men. Alternate translation: "Then the others started to fight also. It was a very fierce battle that day" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abner](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the servants of](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

17 And the battle was very severe that day and [Abner](#) and the men of [Israel](#) were defeated before [the servants of David](#).

## 2 Samuel 2:18

### Zeruiah ... Joab ... Abishai ... Asahel

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Asahel was swift in his feet like a wild gazelle

Here Asahel is compared to a gazelle, an animal that runs very fast.  
Alternate translation: "Asahel could run very fast" (See: [Simile](#))

### wild gazelle

This small, four-legged animal, with two long horns on its head, runs very fast.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The...sons of](#)
- [Joab](#)

#### ULT

**18** The three [sons of](#) Zeruiah were there: [Joab](#), and Abishai, and Asahel. Asahel was swift on his feet like one of the gazelles which are in the field.

## 2 Samuel 2:19

### Abner

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### **followed him without turning away in any direction**

Here “without turning away” is stated in negative form to emphasize how closely he followed Abner’s path.  
Alternate translation: “followed him wherever he went”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abner](#)
- [Abner](#)

### ULT

**19** And Asahel pursued after [Abner](#), and he turned not aside by going to the right or to the left from after [Abner](#).

## 2 Samuel 2:20

### Asahel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abner](#)
- [It is I](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then [Abner](#) looked behind him and said, "Is that you Asahel?" And he answered, "[It is I.](#)"

## 2 Samuel 2:21

### Turn aside to your right or to your left ... turn aside

“Stop chasing me ... stop chasing Abner”

### seize one of the young men and take his armor

Abner was asking Asahel to kill and plunder another younger soldier who would not be as dangerous as Abner. He did not want to kill Asahel. Alternate translation: “fight with another soldier and take his equipment as plunder” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abner](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> And [Abner](#) said to him, “Turn aside to your right or to your left, and seize for you from one of the young men, and take for you his belongings.” But Asahel was not willing to turn aside from behind him.

## 2 Samuel 2:22

### Why should I strike you to the ground?

This rhetorical question is used to warn Asahel of the danger he faced. "Strike to the ground" is a polite way of saying "to kill."  
Alternate translation: "I do not wish to kill you" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Euphemism](#))

### How then could I hold up my face to Joab, your brother?

This rhetorical question emphasizes that Abner does not want to fight and kill Asahel because it would destroy Abner's relationship with Joab. Here "hold up my face to Joab" is an idiom that means that he would be too ashamed to look at Joab. Alternate translation: "I would be too ashamed to look at your brother, Joab" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abner](#)
- [to the ground](#)
- [my face](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [your brother](#)

### ULT

**22** And [Abner](#) said again to Asahel, "You turn aside from behind me. Why should I strike you [to the ground](#)? How then could I lift up [my face](#) towards [Joab](#), [your brother](#)?"

## 2 Samuel 2:23

### turn aside

This means to “halt” or “stop chasing.”

### the blunt end of his spear

This refers to the handle, which is not sharp or designed to pierce anything. It can be implied that Abner was only trying to stop Asahel from following him, and did not intend to kill him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abner](#)
- [so that...came out](#)
- [And he fell](#)
- [and died](#)
- [and died](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But he refused to turn aside, and so [Abner](#) struck him in the stomach with the back of the spear, [so that](#) the spear [came out](#) from his back. [And he fell](#) there, [and died](#) on the spot. And it happened that all the ones coming to the place where Asahel fell there [and died](#), they stood.



## 2 Samuel 2:24

### Abishai

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### hill of Ammah ... Giah

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [Abner](#)
- [the front of](#)
- [Gibeon](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But [Joab](#) and Abishai pursued after [Abner](#). And when the sun was going down, they came to the hill of Ammah, which is on [the front of](#) Giah by the road to the wilderness of [Gibeon](#).

## 2 Samuel 2:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Benjamin
- Abner
- the top of

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> And the sons of Benjamin gathered themselves behind Abner, and they were as one band, and they stood on the top of the hill as one.

## 2 Samuel 2:26

### Abner called

“Abner shouted” or “Abner yelled”

### Must the sword devour forever?

This rhetorical question emphasizes that the battle had already continued too long. Here “sword” refers to the fighting. The killing in the battle is spoken of as if a wild animal was eating the soldiers.

Alternate translation: “We do not need to keep using our swords to fight and kill each other.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Then [Abner](#) called to [Joab](#) and said, “Must [the sword devour](#) forever? Do you not [know](#) that it will be bitter in the end? And until when will it be that you not tell [to the people to turn](#) from after [their brothers](#)?”

### Do you not know it will be bitter in the end?

This rhetorical question is used to force Joab to acknowledge that continued fighting could only result in more suffering. Here “bitter” is a euphemism for the terrible suffering that would occur. Alternate translation: “You know very well that there will be a terrible result if this continues!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Euphemism](#))

### How long will it be before you tell your men to stop pursuing their brothers?

This rhetorical question is intended to convince Joab to stop fighting their fellow Israelites. Here “brother” is used to represent the members of the nation of Israel. Alternate translation: “Stop this now so that Israelites will not have to kill each other!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abner](#)
- [Then...called](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [the sword](#)
- [devour](#)
- [you...know](#)
- [to the people](#)
- [to turn](#)
- [their brothers](#)

## 2 Samuel 2:27

### Just as God lives

This is a very strong vow. Alternate translation: "With God as my witness" or "God will affirm that I mean what I say"

### if you had not said that ... pursued their brothers until the morning

This hypothetical statement tells what might have happened if Abner had not spoken wisely to Joab. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- God
- As...lives
- the people
- his brother

### ULT

**27** And Joab said, "As God lives, if you had not spoken, surely then the people would have pulled back, a man from after his brother, until the morning!"

## 2 Samuel 2:28

### blew the trumpet

Trumpets were used to signal orders to the armies across great distances. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### did not pursue Israel

Here “Israel” refers to the Israelite soldiers. Alternate translation: “did not continue to chase the Israelite soldiers” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- on the trumpet
- the people
- pursue
- Israel

#### ULT

**28** So Joab blew on the trumpet, and all the people stood and did not pursue after Israel anymore, and they did not continue to fight anymore.

## 2 Samuel 2:29

### Arabah ... Mahanaim

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [And Abner](#)
- [went](#)
- [And they crossed](#)
- [the Jordan](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> [And Abner](#) and his men [went](#) all that night through the Arabah. [And they crossed the Jordan](#) and they walked all the morning, and they came to Mahanaim.

## 2 Samuel 2:30

### Asahel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [And Joab](#)
- [returned](#)
- [Abner](#)
- [the people](#)
- [and were missing](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> [And Joab returned](#) from after [Abner](#), and he assembled all [the people](#), and [were missing](#) Asahel and nineteen men from the servants of [David](#).

## 2 Samuel 2:31

### 360 men of Benjamin with Abner

“360 men from Benjamin who followed Abner.” Abner did not die.

### 360 men

“three hundred and sixty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

### of Benjamin

This phrase means “from the tribe of Benjamin.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [But the servants of](#)
- [David](#)
- [from Benjamin](#)
- [Abner](#)

### ULT

**31** [But the servants of David](#) struck down [from Benjamin](#), from the men of [Abner](#), 360 men they killed.



## 2 Samuel 2:32

### took up Asahel

“carried Asahel’s body with them”

### the day dawned on them at Hebron

“they arrived at Hebron by dawn the next morning”

### Translation Words - ULT

- his father
- Joab

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> And they took up Asahel and buried him in the tomb of his father, which was in Bethlehem. Joab and his men walked all of the night, and it became light on them at Hebron.

## 2 Samuel 3

### 2 Samuel 3 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter records the first attempt to end the civil war.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetic song in 3:33-34.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

David never wanted to hurt Saul's family. Isbosheth criticized Abner and Abner became angry. He decided to help David become king of all of Israel. Abner came and made a treaty with David. As he left, Joab arrived and told him he wanted to talk to him and he murdered Abner. David was very unhappy that Abner had been killed.

## 2 Samuel 3:1

### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Samuel gives information about the war between David and the supporters of Saul. (See: [Background Information](#))

### house

Here “house” is used to mean “supporters.”

### grew stronger and stronger

This metaphor means the number of people supporting David increased. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### grew weaker and weaker

This metaphor means the number of people supporting Saul’s family decreased. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the house of](#)
- [the house of \(2\)](#)
- [but the house of](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [David](#)
- [was progressing](#)
- [was progressing](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> And the war was long between [the house of Saul](#) and between [the house of David](#). And David [was progressing](#) stronger and stronger, [but the house of Saul was progressing](#) weaker and weaker.

## 2 Samuel 3:2

### Sons were born to David

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “David’s wives gave birth to six sons” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Ahinoam

This is the name of a woman, a wife of David. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [his firstborn](#)
- [Amnon](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> And [sons](#) were born to David in Hebron. And [his firstborn](#) was [Amnon](#), by Ahinoam the Jezreelitess.

## 2 Samuel 3:3

### second son ... third

These two sons were born after the “firstborn” (verse 2). This is the numerical order of David’s sons. (See: [Numbers](#))

### Abigail ... Maacah

These are women’s names. They are the wives of David. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Kileab ... Nabal ... Talmai

These are men’s names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [son of](#)
- [Maacah](#)
- [king of](#)
- [Geshur](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And his second, Kileab, by Abigail, the wife of Nabal the Carmelite. And the third, [Absalom](#), was [son of Maacah](#), daughter of Talmai, [king of Geshur](#).

## 2 Samuel 3:4

### fourth son ... fifth son

This is the numerical order of David's sons. (See: [Numbers](#))

### Adonijah ... Shephatiah

These are the names of David's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Haggith ... Abital

These are names of David's wives. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- was Adonijah
- son of
- son of (2)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> And the fourth was Adonijah, son of Haggith. And the fifth was Shephatiah, son of Abital.

## 2 Samuel 3:5

### the sixth

This is the numerical order of David's sons. (See: [Numbers](#))

### Ithream

This is the name of one of David's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Eglah

This is the name of one of David's wives. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And the sixth Ithream, by Eglah, David's wife. These were born to David in Hebron.

## 2 Samuel 3:6

### It came about

This introduces a new event in the story of the struggle between David's supporters and Saul's family. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### house of Saul

This refers to Saul's family and supporters who assumed control of his estate after he died.

### house of David

This refers to the supporters of David.

### Abner made himself strong in the house of Saul

Abner's increasing power over Saul's family is spoken of as if he became physically stronger. Alternate translation: "Abner gained more power over the family and supporters of Saul" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the house of](#)
- [the house of \(2\)](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [David](#)
- [that Abner](#)
- [strengthening himself](#)
- [in the house of](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And it happened during the war between [the house of Saul](#) and between [the house of David](#) that Abner was [strengthening himself in the house of Saul](#).



## 2 Samuel 3:7

### Rizpah ... Aiah

These are names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Ishbosheth

This is a male name, a son of Saul. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> And Saul had a concubine, and her name was Rizpah, the daughter of Aiah. And he said to Abner, "Why have you gone in to my father's concubine?"

### Why have you gone in to my father's concubine?

Ishbosheth asked this question to rebuke Abner who was acting like he was the king. Alternate translation: "You did not have the right to go in to father's concubine!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### gone in to

This is a euphemism for sexual relations. Alternate translation: "had sexual relations with" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [And Saul had](#)
- [Abner](#)
- [my father](#)

## 2 Samuel 3:8

### Am I a dog's head that belongs to Judah?

This question is used by Abner as an angry denial of Ishbosheth's accusation. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am not a traitor working for David!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Am I a dog's head that belongs to Judah?

Abner speaks of himself as the head of a dog, which the Israelites considered to be loyal to anyone who fed them. Here "belongs to Judah" implies that Abner's loyalty is to Judah, to which David belonged, and not to Saul's house. Alternate translation: "Am I a traitor for Judah?" or "I am not a traitor working for David!" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And [Abner](#) was very angry at the words of Ishbosheth and said, "Am I a dog's head that belongs to Judah? Today I do [covenant faithfulness](#) with the house of Saul, your father, to his brothers, and to his friends, by not delivering you into the hand of David. And today you call me to account concerning a fault with this woman?"

### into the hand of David

Here "hand" represents the power to defeat. Alternate translation: "to be defeated by David" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### But now you accuse me of an offense concerning this woman?

Abner asks this question to rebuke Ishbosheth. It is unclear if Abner actually slept with Rizpah, or if he was falsely accused. This could mean: (1) Abner was guilty. Alternate translation: "You should not be upset that I slept with this woman!" or (2) Abner was not guilty. Alternate translation: "You should not think that I have slept with this woman!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abner](#)
- [I](#)
- [And...you call...account](#)
- [a fault](#)
- [to Judah](#)
- [covenant faithfulness](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [your father](#)
- [his brothers](#)
- [into the hand of](#)
- [David...to](#)

## 2 Samuel 3:9

### May God do so to me ... and more also, if I do not

This is the form of a solemn vow in that time. Abner is asking God to judge him severely if he does not keep his vow. Your language may have a way of expressing vows. Alternate translation: "I am asking God to punish me if I do not"

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- to Abner
- has sworn
- Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So may God do to Abner, and so more also to him, if as has sworn Yahweh to David, that so I do for him,

## 2 Samuel 3:10

### the house of Saul

Here “house” refers to Saul’s family and supporters who survived Saul’s death. Alternate translation: “the family and supporters of Saul”

### throne of David

This phrase refers to the authority of David as king. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [from the house of](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [the throne of](#)
- [David](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)

### ULT

**10** to transfer the kingdom [from the house of Saul](#) and to set up [the throne of David](#) over [Israel](#) and over [Judah](#), from Dan to [Beersheba](#).”

## 2 Samuel 3:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- to answer
- Abner

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> And he was not able to answer Abner another word, because of his fear of him.

## 2 Samuel 3:12

### to David

Some versions add “when he was at Hebron” and others do not. You may want to add the phrase if it is present in your national version. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

### Whose land is this?

The original text of this question is not clear. This could mean: (1) Abner had the power to give the land to David. Alternate translation: “This land is mine!” or (2) David is chosen by God to rule the land: Alternate translation: “This land rightfully belongs to you!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### my hand is with you

Here “hand” represents Abner’s assistance that he is offering to David. Alternate translation: “I will assist you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abner](#)
- [messengers](#)
- [David](#)
- [land](#)
- [Cut](#)
- [your covenant](#)
- [my hand](#)
- [Israel](#)

### ULT

**12** And [Abner](#) sent [messengers](#) to [David](#) on his behalf saying, “Whose [land](#) is this? [Cut your covenant](#) with me, and behold [my hand](#) is with you, to bring over all of [Israel](#) to you.”

## 2 Samuel 3:13

### you cannot see my face unless you first bring Michal

David is stating the condition under which he will meet Abner. Here “face” refers to David himself. Alternate translation: “you cannot see me unless you bring Michal to me first” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Michal

This is the name of a daughter of Saul. She was David’s first wife. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And he said, “Good, I will cut a covenant with you. Only one thing I require from you, that is, that you will not see my face unless to my face you bring Michal, Saul’s daughter, when you come to see my face.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Good
- will cut
- a covenant
- I
- my face
- my face
- Saul

## 2 Samuel 3:14

### one hundred Philistine foreskins

This represents the number of men David killed so that Saul would allow him to marry Michal. These men are represented here by their "foreskins." The "foreskin" is the fold of skin that covers the male reproductive organ. (See: [Numbers](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [messengers](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [s son](#)
- [Philistine](#)

### ULT

**14** Then [David](#) sent [messengers](#) to Ishbosheth, [Saul's son](#), saying, "Give me my wife Michal, whom I betrothed to myself with one hundred [Philistine](#) foreskins."



## 2 Samuel 3:15

### took her from her husband

Paltiel was Michal's second husband. Saul gave her to him after David fled from Saul. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Paltiel ... Laish

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)

#### ULT

**15** And Ishbosheth sent and took her from with her husband, from with Paltiel, [son of](#) Laish.

## 2 Samuel 3:16

### Bahurim

This is the name of a village. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- walking
- walk
- Abner
- back
- and he returned back

### ULT

**16** And her husband walked with her, walking and weeping behind her to Bahurim. Then Abner said to him, “walk back” and he returned back.

## 2 Samuel 3:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Abner
- the elders of
- Israel
- seeking to secure
- David
- for a king

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> And Abner had communication with the elders of Israel saying, "Yesterday and the day before, you were seeking to secure David for a king over you.

## 2 Samuel 3:18

### Now do it

“So now make David your king”

### By the hand of my servant David

Here “hand” refers to David’s power to defeat the Philistines.  
Alternate translation: “I will empower my servant David and” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the hand of the Philistines

Here “hand” refers to power over Israel. Alternate translation: “the power of the Philistines” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the hand of all their enemies

Here “hand” refers to power over Israel. Alternate translation: “the power of all of their enemies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [their enemies](#)
- [By the hand of](#)
- [from the hand of](#)
- [my servant](#)
- [I will save](#)
- [my people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the Philistines](#)

### ULT

**18** And now do it, for [Yahweh](#) said concerning [David](#) saying, ‘[By the hand of my servant David I will save my people Israel from the hand of the Philistines and from the hand of all their enemies.](#)’”

## 2 Samuel 3:19

### the people of Benjamin ... the whole house of Benjamin

Both of these statements refer to the descendants of Benjamin, who were one of the tribes of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abner](#)
- [Abner](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [David](#)
- [was good](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [house of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> And [Abner](#) also spoke in the ears of [Benjamin](#). And [Abner](#) also went to speak in the ears of [David](#) in Hebron all that [was good](#) in the eyes of [Israel](#) and in the eyes of all of the [house of Benjamin](#).

## 2 Samuel 3:20

### twenty of his men

The number of men who came with Abner. (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abner](#)
- [for Abner](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [a feast](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> And [Abner](#) came to [David](#) in Hebron, and with him twenty men; and [David](#) had made [a feast for Abner](#) and for the men who were with him.

## 2 Samuel 3:21

### all Israel

This phrase means “all of the nation of Israel.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### So David sent Abner away

They parted as friends. David was not angry with Abner.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Abner
- Abner
- David
- David
- my lord
- the king
- Israel
- that they may cut
- a covenant
- and you will reign
- your soul

### ULT

**21** And [Abner](#) said to [David](#), “Let me arise, and let me go, and let me gather to [my lord the king](#), all of [Israel](#) that they may cut a covenant with you, and you will reign over all that [your soul](#) desires.” And [David](#) sent [Abner](#) away, and he left in peace.

## 2 Samuel 3:22

### plunder

These are items taken from the enemy.

### Abner was not with David in Hebron

Abner had already left to return home.

### Translation Words - ULT

- the servants of
- David
- David
- and Joab
- but Abner

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> And behold, the servants of David and Joab came from a raid and brought with them much plunder, but Abner was not with David in Hebron because he had sent him away and he had gone in peace.



## 2 Samuel 3:23

### they told Joab

“someone told Joab”

### Ner

This is a man’s name. He is the grandfather of Saul. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [And Joab](#)
- [to Joab](#)
- [Abner](#)
- [son of](#)
- [the king](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> [And Joab](#) and all the army which was with him arrived, and they told [to Joab](#) saying, “[Abner son of Ner](#) came to [the king](#), and he let him go, and he went in peace.”

## 2 Samuel 3:24

### What have you done?

Joab asks this question to rebuke David for letting Abner go in peace. Alternate translation: "You should not have done this!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Why have you sent him away, and he is gone?

Joab asks this question to rebuke David for letting Abner escape. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Abner was here and you let him leave!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> And [Joab](#) came to [the king](#) and said, "What have you done? Behold, [Abner](#) came to you! Why is this you have let him go, and he went [and is surely gone](#)?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Abner](#)
- [and is surely gone](#)

## 2 Samuel 3:25

### Do you not know ... everything you are doing?

Joab asks this question to convince David that Abner is plotting against David. Alternate translation: "Surely you know ... everything you are doing." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [You know](#)
- [Abner](#)
- [son of](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> [You know](#) that [Abner son of Ner](#) came to deceive you and to know your going out and your coming in and to know all which you are doing?"

## 2 Samuel 3:26

### well of Sirah

“Sirah” is the name of a place where the well was located. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- And...went out
- David
- messengers
- Abner
- and they brought...back
- did...know

### ULT

**26** And Joab went out from with David and he sent messengers after Abner, and they brought him back from the cistern of Sirah, but David did not know.

## 2 Samuel 3:27

### the middle of the gate

This refers to one of the gates in the city wall at Hebron. As the UST implies, city gates were constructed as part of buildings set into the city walls. Inside the passageway were doors leading to side rooms, where guests could be received and business and judicial proceedings could be conducted. It was probably in one of these rooms that Joab murdered Abner.

### the blood of Asahel

Here “blood” is associated with the death of Asahel. Alternate translation: “the death of Asahel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Asahel

This is the name of a male person. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abner](#)
- [And...returned](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [the gate](#)
- [and he died](#)
- [his brother](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> And [Abner returned](#) to Hebron, and [Joab](#) took him aside into the middle of [the gate](#) to speak with him in the quietness. There Joab stabbed him in the stomach, [and he died](#) for the blood of Asahel, [his brother](#).

## 2 Samuel 3:28

### the blood of Abner

Here “blood” refers to violent death. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Samuel 3:27](#). Alternate translation: “the death of Abner” or “the murder of Abner” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Ner

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [I](#)
- [are...innocent](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [of Abner](#)
- [son of](#)

### ULT

**28** And afterward, [David](#) heard this, and he said, “[I](#) and my kingdom are forever [innocent](#) before [Yahweh](#) of the blood of [Abner son of Ner](#).”

## 2 Samuel 3:29

### fall on the head of Joab and on all his father's house

This phrase means the results of the guilt will happen to Joab and his family as if something heavy had collapsed on them. Alternate translation: "always cause suffering for Joab and for all his father's house" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### all his father's house

Here "house" refers to descendants. Alternate translation: "all the descendants of Joab's father" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### May there never fail to be

This double negative emphasizes that there will always be someone with the problems listed. Alternate translation: "May there always be" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### is killed by the sword

Here "sword" refers to violent death. Alternate translation: "dies violently" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### goes without food

"is hungry"

### Translation Words - ULT

- the head of
- Joab
- Joab
- his father
- s house
- in the family of
- May there never fail to be
- or who is killed
- by the sword
- food

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Let the guilt of Abner's death fall on [the head of Joab](#) and on all [his father's house](#). [May there never fail to be in the family of Joab](#) someone who has a flowing sore or skin disease or who is lame and must walk with a staff [or who is killed by the sword](#) or who goes without [food](#)."

## 2 Samuel 3:30

### Abishai ... Asahel

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So Joab](#)
- [his brother](#)
- [their brother](#)
- [killed](#)
- [Abner](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> [So Joab](#) and Abishai [his brother](#) killed [Abner](#), because he had killed [their brother](#) Asahel at Gibeon in battle.



## 2 Samuel 3:31

### Tear your clothes, put on sackcloth

These were symbolic actions to demonstrate their grief and sadness.  
(See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- Joab
- the people
- sackcloth
- Abner's body
- Now King
- walked...in the funeral procession

### ULT

**31** David said to Joab and to all the people who were with him, "Tear your clothes, put on sackcloth, and mourn before Abner's body." Now King David walked behind the body in the funeral procession.

## 2 Samuel 3:32

### The king wept and cried loudly

The words “wept” and “cried loudly” mean basically the same thing and emphasize how much David mourned for Abner. (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abner](#)
- [Abner](#)
- [The king](#)
- [the tomb of](#)
- [the people](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> They buried [Abner](#) in Hebron. [The king](#) wept and cried loudly at [the tomb of Abner](#), and all [the people](#) also wept.

## 2 Samuel 3:33

### Should Abner die as a fool dies?

This rhetorical question is used to emphasize that his death was not fair. Alternate translation: "Abner should not have died in disgrace!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> [The king](#) lamented for [Abner](#) and sang, "Should [Abner](#) die as a fool dies?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)
- [Abner](#)
- [Abner](#)

## 2 Samuel 3:34

### Your hands were not bound. Your feet were not shackled

These two sentences express similar ideas. They can be combined into one sentence. Alternate translation: "You were in no way a criminal in prison" or "You were completely innocent of doing wrong" (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Your hands were not bound. Your feet were not shackled. As a man falls before the sons of injustice, so you have fallen." Once more all the people wept over him.

### Your hands were not bound

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "No one had tied your hands" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Your feet were not shackled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "No one had attached your feet to chains" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the sons of injustice

This refers to people who are unjust or wicked. Alternate translation: "wicked men" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Your hands](#)
- [were...bound](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the people](#)

## 2 Samuel 3:35

### All the people came

This deliberate exaggeration is used to show that the nation of Israel wanted to take care of David in his grief. Alternate translation: "Many people came" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### May God do so to me, and more also, if

This is the form of a solemn vow in that time. David is asking God to judge him severely if he eats anything before sunset. Your language many have a way of expressing vows. Alternate translation: "I am asking God to punish me if"

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> All [the people](#) came [to make David eat](#) while it was still day, [but David swore](#), "May [God](#) do so to me, and more also, if I taste [bread](#) or anything else before the sun goes down."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [to make...eat](#)
- [bread \(2\)](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [but...swore](#)
- [God](#)

## 2 Samuel 3:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- them
- the king
- pleased

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> All the people took notice of David's grief, and it pleased them, as whatever the king did pleased them.

## 2 Samuel 3:37

### Ner

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- So...understood
- the people
- Israel
- to kill
- Abner
- son of

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> So all the people and all Israel understood that day that it was not the king's desire to kill Abner son of Ner.

## 2 Samuel 3:38

### Do you not know that a prince and a great man has fallen this day in Israel?

This rhetorical question is used to show how much David respected Abner. Here “fallen” is a euphemism that means “died.” It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “It is certainly true that a great prince has died today in Israel!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Euphemism](#))

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> The king said to his servants, “Do you not know that a prince and a great man has fallen this day in Israel?”

### a prince and a great man

These two phrases both refer to Abner. Alternate translation: “a great prince” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)
- [his servants](#)
- [Do you...know](#)
- [a prince](#)
- [in Israel](#)



## 2 Samuel 3:39

### Zeruiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### are too brutal

“are too much like animals” or “are too violent”

### Translation Words - ULT

- king
- the sons of
- Yahweh
- the evildoer

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> Now I am weak today, though I am an anointed king. These men, the sons of Zeruiah, are too brutal for me. May Yahweh repay the evildoer by punishing him for his wickedness, as he deserves.”

## 2 Samuel 4

### 2 Samuel 4 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

While the end of the civil war occurs in this chapter, David still only reigned over Judah (1-4).

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### David and Ishbosheth

David never sought revenge against Saul's family. When two men snuck into Ishbosheth's room, cut off his head and brought it to David, David had them killed for killing an innocent man. (See: [avenge](#), [avenger](#), [revenge](#), [vengeance](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical questions

When two men brought Ishbosheth's head to David and expected to get a reward for it, David condemned them with the rhetorical question: "should I not now require his blood from your hand, and remove you from the earth?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [condemn](#), [condemned](#), [condemnation](#) and [reward](#), [prize](#), [deserve](#))

## 2 Samuel 4:1

### Ishbosheth

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### his hands became weak

In this phrase “his hands” represents Ishbosheth himself. Alternate translation: “Ishbosheth became weak” or “Ishbosheth lost all strength” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> When Ishbosheth, [Saul's son](#), heard that [Abner](#) was dead in Hebron, [his hands](#) became weak, and all [Israel](#) was troubled.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [s son](#)
- [Abner](#)
- [his hands](#)
- [Israel](#)

## 2 Samuel 4:2

### Baanah ... Recab ... Rimmon

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Now Saul's son had two men

This introduces the men Baanah and Rechab into the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### for Beeroth is also considered part of Benjamin

Here the author begins to provide background information about Beeroth for the reader. The area of Beeroth was part of the land that belonged to the tribe of Benjamin. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Beeroth

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [s son](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [of the people of](#)
- [captains of](#)
- [The name of...was](#)
- [Rimmon](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [Benjamin](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Now [Saul's son](#) had two men who were [captains of](#) groups of soldiers. [The name of one was](#) Baanah and the other Recab, [sons of Rimmon](#) the Beerothite [of the people of Benjamin](#) (for Beeroth is also considered part of [Benjamin](#),

## 2 Samuel 4:3

### and the Beerothites fled to Gittaim and have been living there until this very time

Here the author finishes providing background information about Beeroth for the reader. The area of Beeroth was part of the land that belonged to the tribe of Benjamin. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Gittaim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> and the Beerothites fled to Gittaim and have been living there until this very time).

## 2 Samuel 4:4

### General Information:

This verse pauses the main story to provide background information about Mephibosheth, a descendent of Saul through Jonathan instead of through Ishbosheth. Mephibosheth will become an important character later in the book. (See: [Background Information](#) and [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### crippled in his feet

This phrase means “unable to walk.”

### five years old

This was the age of Jonathan’s son at the time of his father’s death. (See: [Numbers](#))

### the news about Saul and Jonathan

This refers to the news about their death.

### nurse

This is a woman or girl who is hired to care for young children.

### became lame

This explains how Mephibosheth was injured so he was unable to walk.

### Mephibosheth

This is the name of Jonathan’s young son, the grandson of Saul. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Saul
- Saul
- s son
- a son
- who (2)
- His nurse
- Jonathan’s son fell

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Now Jonathan, [Saul’s son](#), had [a son](#) [who](#) was crippled in his feet. He was five years old when the news about [Saul](#) and Jonathan came from Jezreel. [His nurse](#) picked him up to flee. But as she was running, [Jonathan’s son fell](#) and became lame. His name was Mephibosheth.

## 2 Samuel 4:5

### General Information:

The story returns to the actions of Rechab and Baanah who were introduced in [2 Samuel 4:2](#).

### the heat of the day

the middle of the day, the part of the day when it is the hottest

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Rimmon](#)
- [the house of](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So [the sons of Rimmon](#) the Beerothite, Recab and Baanah, traveled during the heat of the day to [the house of](#) Ishbosheth, as he was resting at noon.

## 2 Samuel 4:6

### sifting wheat

“cleaning chaff from wheat”

### Translation Words - ULT

- while sifting wheat
- his brother
- in quietly
- and then escaped

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Behold, the woman guarding the door had fallen asleep **while sifting wheat**, and Recab and Baanah, **his brother**, walked **in quietly**, stabbed Ishbosheth in the stomach, **and then escaped**.



## 2 Samuel 4:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the house
- and killed him
- his head
- it
- to the Arabah

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So after they entered the house, they attacked him and killed him as he was lying on his bed in his room. Then they cut off his head and carried it away, traveling on the road all night to the Arabah.

## 2 Samuel 4:8

### sought your life

This idiom means “was trying to kill you.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the head of
- this is the head of
- David
- the king
- the king
- son of
- Saul
- against Saul
- your enemy
- sought
- your life
- Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> They brought [the head of](#) Ishbosheth to [David](#) at Hebron, and they said to [the king](#), “Look, [this is the head of](#) Ishbosheth [son of Saul, your enemy](#), who [sought your life](#). Today [Yahweh](#) has avenged our master [the king against Saul](#) and his descendants.”

## 2 Samuel 4:9

### As Yahweh lives

This is one of the strongest oaths David could swear, as Yahweh is the witness. Alternate translation: "I swear on the life of Yahweh" (See: [Idiom](#))

### who delivered my life

Here "life" refers to David himself. This means that Yahweh has kept David alive. Alternate translation: "who rescued me" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> David answered Recab and Baanah [his brother](#), [the sons of Rimmon](#) the Beerothite; he said to them, "As [Yahweh lives](#), who [delivered my life](#) from every trouble,

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [his brother](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Rimmon](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [As...lives](#)
- [my life](#)
- [delivered](#)
- [trouble](#)

## 2 Samuel 4:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> when someone told me, 'Look, [Saul](#) is dead,' thinking he was bringing good news, I seized him and killed him at Ziklag. That was the reward I gave him for his news.

## 2 Samuel 4:11

### How much more ... should I not now require his blood from your hand, and remove you from the earth?

This question is used to show that the men had committed an especially serious crime. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are even more guilty! It is my duty to require his blood from your hand and to remove you from the earth." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### require his blood from your hand

The phrase "his blood" represents the life of Ishbosheth. Here "from your hand" represents Rechab and Baanah, the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, introduced in [2 Samuel 4:5](#). Alternate translation: "hold you responsible for the death of Ishbosheth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [have killed](#)
- [innocent](#)
- [in his own house](#)
- [should I...require](#)
- [his blood](#)
- [from your hand](#)
- [the earth](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> How much more, when wicked men [have killed](#) an [innocent](#) person [in his own house](#) on his bed, [should I](#) not now [require his blood from your hand](#), and remove you from [the earth](#)?"

## 2 Samuel 4:12

### cut off their hands and feet and hung them up

These were symbolic actions to show contempt for the men. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### they took the head of Ishbosheth and buried it in the grave

This was a symbolic act to honor Ishbosheth. This could be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "they honored Ishbosheth by burying his head in the grave" (See: [Symbolic Action](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then David gave orders to the young men, and they killed them and cut off their hands and feet and hung them up beside the pool at Hebron. But they took the head of Ishbosheth and buried it in the grave of Abner in Hebron.

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Then...gave orders to
- the young men
- their hands
- and hung them up
- But...the head of
- Abner

## **2 Samuel 5**

### **2 Samuel 5 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This records the beginning of the kingdom's expansion.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **David conquers Jerusalem**

David brought the combined army to Jerusalem and conquered it by going in through the water shaft. He enlarged the city and strengthened the defenses, and made it his capital. Jerusalem is an important place in the plans of God.

##### **David consulting God**

David always consulted God before fighting a battle. The Philistines invaded Israel trying to capture David. David asked God if he should attack the Philistines, and God said yes; so he defeated them. They invaded again and God told him to attack them from the rear and he defeated them again.

## 2 Samuel 5:1

### we are your flesh and bone

This phrase means “a relative.” Alternate translation: “we are related to you” or “we are of the same family” - (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the tribes of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then all [the tribes of Israel](#) came to [David](#) at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”



## 2 Samuel 5:2

### In the recent past

This is historical information. Saul had been their king before David. (See: [Background Information](#))

### You will shepherd my people Israel, and you will become ruler over Israel

These two clauses mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh had chosen David to be king. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### You will shepherd my people Israel

Here ruling over the people is spoken of as shepherding them. Alternate translation: "You will care for my people Israel" or "You will rule over my people Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Saul
- king
- Israelite
- Israel
- Israel
- Yahweh
- my people

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> In the recent past, when Saul was king over us, it was you who led the Israelite army. Yahweh said to you, 'You will shepherd my people Israel, and you will become ruler over Israel.'

## 2 Samuel 5:3

### They anointed David king over Israel

To “anoint” is a symbolic act to show that they recognized that God had chosen David as king. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the elders of
- Israel
- Israel
- the king
- King
- king
- David
- David
- and...made
- a covenant
- Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> So all the elders of Israel came to the king at Hebron, and King David made a covenant with them before Yahweh. They anointed David king over Israel.

## 2 Samuel 5:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- was

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> David was thirty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned forty years.

## 2 Samuel 5:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- and in Jerusalem
- Israel
- and Judah

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> In Hebron he reigned over Judah seven years and six months, and in Jerusalem he reigned thirty-three years over all Israel and Judah.

## 2 Samuel 5:6

### General Information:

David and the army of Israel attack Jerusalem.

### You will not come here except to be turned away by the blind and the lame

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "If you come here, even the blind and the lame will be able to turn you away"

### the blind and the lame

Here "the blind" and "the lame" are nominal adjectives. Alternate translation: "those people who cannot see and those who cannot walk" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [the Jebusites](#)
- [the land](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> [The king](#) and his men went [to Jerusalem](#) against [the Jebusites](#), the inhabitants of [the land](#). They said to David, "You will not come here except to be turned away by the blind and the lame. [David](#) cannot come here."

## 2 Samuel 5:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- Zion

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Nevertheless, David captured the stronghold of Zion, which now is the city of David.

## 2 Samuel 5:8

### David said, “Those who attack the Jebusites

David was speaking to his soldiers. Alternate translation: “David said to his soldiers, ‘Those who want to get rid of the Jebus people’”

### The ‘blind and the lame’

This could mean: (1) this refers to people who are truly lame and blind or (2) this is a metonym that speaks about the Jebusites inside the city of Jerusalem as if they were all weak and handicapped. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [who are...s enemies](#)
- [the palace](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> At that time [David](#) said, “Those who attack the Jebusites will have to go through the water shaft to reach the ‘lame and the blind’ [who are David’s enemies](#).” That is why people say, “The ‘blind and the lame’ must not enter [the palace](#).”

## 2 Samuel 5:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- He (2)
- and called
- toward the inside

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So David lived in the stronghold and called it the city of David. He fortified around it, from the terrace toward the inside.



## 2 Samuel 5:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- became
- because Yahweh
- the God

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> David became very powerful because Yahweh, the God of hosts, was with him.

## 2 Samuel 5:11

### Hiram

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### carpenters

those who work with wood

### masons

those who work with stone or brick

### Translation Words - ULT

- [king](#)
- [of Tyre](#)
- [messengers](#)
- [David](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [a house](#)

### ULT

**11** Then Hiram [king of Tyre](#) sent [messengers](#) to [David](#), and [cedar](#) trees, carpenters, and masons. They built [a house](#) for David.

## 2 Samuel 5:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- knew
- Yahweh
- as king
- Israel
- Israel
- his kingdom
- his people

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> David knew that Yahweh had established him as king over Israel, and that he had exalted his kingdom for the sake of his people Israel.

## 2 Samuel 5:13

### more sons and daughters were born to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he had more sons and daughters” or “they bore him more sons and daughters” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [from Jerusalem](#)
- [sons](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> [David](#) took more concubines and wives [from Jerusalem](#) after he left Hebron, and more [sons](#) and daughters were born to him.

## 2 Samuel 5:14

### Shammua ... Shobab ... Nathan ... Solomon

These are the names of David's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### who were born to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that his wives bore for him" or "he had" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> These were [the names of](#) the children who were born to him [in Jerusalem](#): Shammua, Shobab, [Nathan](#), [Solomon](#),

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the names of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [Solomon](#)

## 2 Samuel 5:15

### Ibhar ... Elishua ... Nepheg ... Japhia

These are the names of David's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**ULT**

**15** Ibhar, Elishua, Nepheg, Japhia,

## 2 Samuel 5:16

### Elishama ... Eliada ... Eliphelet

These are the names of David's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**ULT**

**16** Elishama, Eliada, and Eliphelet.

## 2 Samuel 5:17

### David had been anointed as king over Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Israel had anointed David as king" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### they all went out looking for him

Here "all" is a generalization that means the Philistine army.

Alternate translation: "the Philistine army went looking for him" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

#### ULT

17 Now when the Philistines heard that David had been anointed as king over Israel, they all went out looking for him. But David heard about it and went down to the stronghold.

### Translation Words - ULT

- the Philistines
- they
- David
- him
- David
- as king
- Israel
- looking for



## 2 Samuel 5:18

### Valley of Rephaim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

**18** Now the Philistines had come and spread out in the Valley of Rephaim.

## 2 Samuel 5:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- from Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the Philistines
- victory over them
- victory over

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Then David asked for help from Yahweh. He said, "Should I attack the Philistines? Will you give victory over them?" Yahweh said to David, "Attack, for I will certainly give you victory over the Philistines."

## 2 Samuel 5:20

### Baal Perazim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Yahweh has burst through my enemies before me like a bursting flood of water

Here David speaks of the victory that Yahweh brought as if it were a flood of water that overflowed its banks and covered the land, causing destruction. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has overwhelmed my enemies like a flood overwhelms the land" (See: [Simile](#))

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> So [David](#) attacked at Baal Perazim, and there [he](#) defeated them. He commented, "Yahweh has burst through [my enemies](#) before me like a bursting flood of water." So [the name of](#) that place [became](#) Baal Perazim.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [he](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my enemies](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [became](#)

## 2 Samuel 5:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> The Philistines left their idols there, and [David](#) and his men carried them away.

## 2 Samuel 5:22

### the Philistines came up again

They “came up” because the Philistines lived at a lower elevation than David’s stronghold.

### Valley of Rephaim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then [the Philistines](#) came up again and spread out once more in the Valley of Rephaim.

## 2 Samuel 5:23

### balsam woods

“Balsam” here is a type of tree, and the “woods” describe many balsam trees growing together. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [from Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> So [David](#) asked help [from Yahweh](#) again, and Yahweh said to him, “You must not attack their front, but rather circle around behind them and come on them through the balsam woods.”

## 2 Samuel 5:24

### When you hear ... Yahweh will have gone out before you to attack the army of the Philistines

This is the continuation of Yahweh's instruction to David that began in [2 Samuel 5:23](#). Yahweh here speaks of himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### When you hear the sound of marching in the wind blowing through the balsam treetops

This speaks of the sound of the leaves rustling as wind blows through them as if it were the sound of marching. Alternate translation: "When the wind blowing through the tops of the balsam trees sounds like men marching" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in the wind blowing through](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [will have gone out](#)
- [the Philistines](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> When you hear the sound of marching [in the wind blowing through](#) the balsam treetops, then attack with force. Do this because [Yahweh will have gone out](#) before you to attack the army of [the Philistines.](#)"

## 2 Samuel 5:25

### Geba ... Gezer

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Yahweh
- had commanded him
- Philistines

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> So David did as Yahweh had commanded him. He killed Philistines from Geba all the way to Gezer.



## 2 Samuel 6

### 2 Samuel 6 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Bringing the Ark of the Covenant to Jerusalem

David organized a procession with many musical instruments to bring the ark to Jerusalem. They put it on a cart; but when the oxen stumbled, Uzzah reached out to steady it so it would not fall. God killed him for touching the ark. David was angry at God for killing Uzzah and was afraid to bring the ark any further. Uzzah died because the ark was perfectly holy. (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

##### Dancing

David danced for joy in front of the ark. His wife, Michal, criticized David for uncovering himself as he danced, but David did not care. (See: [joy](#), [joyful](#), [rejoice](#), [glad](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Irony

Michal criticized David by using irony: “How honored the king of Israel was today, who undressed himself today before the eyes of the slave girls among his servants, like one of the crude fellows who shamelessly undresses himself!” (See: [Irony](#))

## 2 Samuel 6:1

### Now

This word marks a new part of the story.

### all the chosen men of Israel

This metonym represents the army of the nation of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### thirty thousand

“30,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now [David](#) again gathered together all the chosen men [of Israel](#), thirty thousand.

## 2 Samuel 6:2

### from Baalah in Judah to bring up from there the ark of God

It is implied that they are taking the ark to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “from Baalah in Judah to take to Jerusalem the ark of God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### to bring up from there the ark of God

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem and going down from it.

### to bring up

The word “bring” can be translated as “take.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Baalah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### which is called by the name of Yahweh of hosts

Yahweh’s name was written on the ark.

### who sits enthroned over the cherubim

You may need to make explicit that the cherubim are those on the lid of the ark of the covenant. The biblical writers often spoke of the ark of the covenant as if it were Yahweh’s footstool upon which he rested his feet as he sat on his throne in heaven above. Alternate translation: “who sits on his throne above the cherubim on the ark of the covenant” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### enthroned

to sit on a throne

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [his men](#)
- [the Box of the Covenant of](#)
- [God](#)
- [is called by](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the cherubim](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> [David](#) arose and went with all [his men](#) who were with him from Baalah in Judah to bring up from there [the Box of the Covenant of God](#), which is called by the name of [Yahweh](#) of hosts, who sits enthroned over [the cherubim](#).

## 2 Samuel 6:3

### General Information:

David and the army of the nation of Israel move the ark of the covenant.

### Abinadab ... Uzzah ... Ahio

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- They set
- the Box of the Covenant of
- God
- out of...s house
- the sons of

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> They set the Box of the Covenant of God on a new cart. They brought it out of Abinadab's house, which was on a hill. Uzzah and Ahio, the sons of Abinadab, were guiding the new cart.

## 2 Samuel 6:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- out of...s house
- the Box of the Covenant of
- the ark
- God
- was walking

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> They brought the cart out of Abinadab's house on the hill with the Box of the Covenant of God on it. Ahio was walking in front of the ark.

## 2 Samuel 6:5

### all the house of Israel

This metonym represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "all the other Israelites with him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### tambourines

A tambourine is a musical instrument like the head of a drum with pieces of metal around the side that sound when the instrument is shaken or hit. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### rattles

musical instruments with many small, hard objects inside a hard shell, making rhythmic noise when shaken (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the house of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [harps](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then David and all [the house of Israel](#) began to play before [Yahweh](#), celebrating with wooden instruments, [harps](#), lyres, tambourines, rattles, and cymbals.

## 2 Samuel 6:6

### Nakon

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the threshing floor of](#)
- [the Box of the Covenant of](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When they came to [the threshing floor of Nakon](#), the oxen stumbled, and Uzzah reached out with his hand to grab [the Box of the Covenant of God](#), and he took hold of it.

## 2 Samuel 6:7

### anger of Yahweh burned

Here the “anger of Yahweh” is spoken of as if it were fire. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### for his sin

It was a sin for Uzzah to touch the ark because Yahweh had commanded that no one should touch the ark. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- God
- Uzzah died
- the Box of the Covenant of

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then the anger of Yahweh burned against Uzzah. God attacked him there for his error. Uzzah died there by the Box of the Covenant of God.



## 2 Samuel 6:8

### Perez Uzzah

This is the name of a place. Translator may add a footnote that says, "The name 'Perez Uzzah' means 'the punishment of Uzzah.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### to this day

This means to the time when this was being written, not to the present time in the twenty-first century.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [and he called the name of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> David was angry because [Yahweh](#) had attacked Uzzah, [and he called the name of](#) that place Perez Uzzah. That place is called Perez Uzzah to this day.

## 2 Samuel 6:9

### How can the ark of Yahweh come to me?

David uses this question to emphasize that he is afraid to take the ark to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "I am too afraid to bring the ark of Yahweh with me to Jerusalem." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [was afraid of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the Box of the Covenant of](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [David was afraid of Yahweh](#) that day.  
He said, "How can [the Box of the Covenant of Yahweh](#) come to me?"

## 2 Samuel 6:10

### Obed Edom the Gittite

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- he
- the Box of the Covenant of
- Yahweh
- the house of

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> So David was not willing to take the Box of the Covenant of Yahweh with him into the city of David. Instead, he put it aside in the house of Obed Edom the Gittite.

## 2 Samuel 6:11

### blessed him

Here "him" refers to Obed Edom the Gittite.

### Translation Words - ULT

- The Box of the Covenant of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the house of
- his household
- So...blessed

### ULT

**11** The Box of the Covenant of Yahweh remained in the house of Obed Edom the Gittite for three months. So Yahweh blessed him and all his household.

## 2 Samuel 6:12

### Now

This word starts a new part of the story.

### King David was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people told King David” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Obed Edom’s house

Here “house” represents a family. Alternate translation: “Obed Edom and his family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### brought up the ark of God

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem and going down from it. Alternate translation: “moved the ark of God” or “took the ark of God”

### brought up

The word “brought” can be translated as “took.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [King](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [with joy](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [has blessed](#)
- [s house](#)
- [from...s house](#)
- [the Box of the Covenant of](#)
- [the Box of the Covenant of](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Now [King David](#) was told, “[Yahweh has blessed](#) [Obed Edom’s house](#) and everything that belongs to him because of [the Box of the Covenant of God.](#)” So [David](#) went and brought up [the Box of the Covenant of God](#) from [Obed Edom’s house](#) to the city of [David with joy](#).

## 2 Samuel 6:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the Box of the Covenant of
- Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> When those who were carrying the Box of the Covenant of Yahweh had gone six steps, he sacrificed an ox and a fattened calf.

## 2 Samuel 6:14

### David danced before Yahweh with all his might

Dancing here is a form of joyfully worshiping Yahweh.

### linen

a cloth made from fibers of the flax plant

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- was wearing
- only a...ephod

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> David danced before Yahweh with all his might; he was wearing only a linen ephod.

## 2 Samuel 6:15

### all the house of Israel

Here “house” represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “all the other Israelites with him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- Israel
- the Box of the Covenant of
- Yahweh
- trumpets

### ULT

**15** So David and all the [the house of Israel](#) brought up [the Box of the Covenant of Yahweh](#) with shouting and the sound of trumpets.



## 2 Samuel 6:16

### Now ... in her heart

The word “Now” marks a break in the story line. Here the narrator gives information about Michal.

### Michal

Michal was the daughter of King Saul and also David’s first wife. See how you translated this name in [2 Samuel 3:13](#).

### she despised him in her heart

Here “heart” represents thoughts or emotions. Alternate translation: “she looked at him with disdain” or “she sneered at him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### before Yahweh

“to Yahweh”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Box of the Covenant of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [King](#)
- [in her heart](#)

### ULT

**16** Now as [the Box of the Covenant of Yahweh](#) came into the city of [David](#), Michal, the daughter of [Saul](#), looked out the window. She saw [King David](#) leaping and dancing before [Yahweh](#). Then she despised him [in her heart](#).

## 2 Samuel 6:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the Box of the Covenant of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- burnt offerings

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> They brought in the Box of the Covenant of Yahweh and put it in its place, in the middle of the tent that David had set up for it. Then David offered burnt offerings and fellowship offerings before Yahweh.

## 2 Samuel 6:18

### he blessed the people in the name of Yahweh of hosts

To bless “in the name of Yahweh of hosts” means to bless with Yahweh’s power and authority or as his representative. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [he blessed](#)
- [the people](#)
- [in the name of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> When [David](#) had finished sacrificing the burnt offerings and the fellowship offerings, [he blessed the people in the name of Yahweh](#) of hosts.

## 2 Samuel 6:19

### cake of raisins

a baked sweet bread made with dried grapes

### Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- the people
- Israel
- bread
- to his own house

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Then he distributed among all [the people](#), the whole multitude of [Israel](#), both to men and women, a loaf of [bread](#), a portion of meat, and a cake of raisins. Then all [the people](#) left; each one returned [to his own house](#).

## 2 Samuel 6:20

### came out

Here “came” can be translated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### How honored the king of Israel was today

This is an ironic statement. Michal means the opposite of what she said, and she does not believe David acted honorably. Michal speaks disrespectfully to King David about his dancing attire and behavior. (See: [Irony](#))

### before the eyes of the slave girls

Here “eyes of the slave girls” represents the slave girls. Alternate translation: “in front of the slave girls” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### crude fellows

Michal is comparing David to vulgar and foolish men.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [Then...returned](#)
- [undressed himself](#)
- [who shamelessly undresses himself](#)
- [the slave girls among](#)
- [his servants](#)
- [his family](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [came out](#)
- [honored...was](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then [David returned](#) to bless [his family](#). Michal, the daughter of [Saul](#), [came out](#) to meet [David](#) and said, “How [honored the king of Israel was today](#), who [undressed himself](#) today before the eyes of [the slave girls among his servants](#), like one of the crude fellows [who shamelessly undresses himself!](#)”

## 2 Samuel 6:21

### who chose me above your father

Here “your” refers to Michal. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### over the people of Yahweh, over Israel

Here “the people of Yahweh” and “Israel” mean the same thing. (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his family](#)
- [the people of](#)
- [Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> [David](#) responded to Michal, “I did that before [Yahweh](#), who chose me above your father and above all [his family](#), who appointed me leader over [the people of Yahweh](#), over [Israel](#). Before [Yahweh](#) I will be joyful!”

## 2 Samuel 6:22

### I will be even more undignified than this

David is being ironic and means the opposite of what he said. He does not believe what he did was actually undignified or that his actions in the future will be undignified. (See: [Irony](#))

### I will be humiliated in my own eyes

Here “in my own eyes” represents what a person considers or thinks about something. Alternate translation: “I will consider myself humiliated” or “I will consider myself a fool” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### But by these slave girls you have spoken about, I will be honored

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “But the slave girls of whom you have spoken will honor me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I will be...undignified
- I will be honored

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> I will be even more undignified than this, and I will be humiliated in my own eyes. But by these slave girls you have spoken about, I will be honored.”

## 2 Samuel 6:23

### had no children to the day of her death

“was never able to bear any children”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Saul

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> So Michal, the daughter of Saul, had no children to the day of her death.



## 2 Samuel 7

### 2 Samuel 7 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This is the finishing of a small interruption about the house of God. (See: [house of God](#), [Yahweh's house](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

David wanted to honor God by building him a temple. God told David that he would not build it, but his son would build it. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

#### Covenant of David

God made a covenant with David that was not conditioned upon anything David or his descendants did. God promised that one of David's descendants would rule Israel forever. Because Israel would not have a king in the future, this promise did not begin at this time. The descendant, who would rule forever, is Jesus. (See: [covenant](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#) and [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#))

## 2 Samuel 7:1

### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### given him rest from all his surrounding enemies

“given him safety from all his surrounding enemies.” Here “rest” is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “caused the enemy people groups to stop attacking Israel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [in his house](#)
- [and after Yahweh](#)
- [had given...rest](#)
- [his...enemies](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> It happened that after [the king](#) had settled [in his house](#), and after Yahweh had given him rest from all his surrounding [enemies](#),

## 2 Samuel 7:2

### I am living in a house of cedar

Cedar is a kind of tree that is known for its strength. If you have an equivalent type of tree in your culture, you can use that name, otherwise you can reword this. Alternate translation: "I am living in a strong, permanent house" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> the king said to Nathan the prophet, "Look, I am living in a house of cedar, but the Box of the Covenant of God is staying in the middle of a tent."

### the ark of God is staying in the middle of a tent

Tents are temporary dwellings. If you do not have tents in your culture, you can word this differently. Alternate translation: "the ark of God is staying in a temporary place" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Nathan
- the prophet
- I
- in a house of
- cedar
- but the Box of the Covenant of
- God
- a tent

## 2 Samuel 7:3

### do what is in your heart

Here “heart” represents the mind. Alternate translation: “do what you think you should” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### for Yahweh is with you

Here “with you” means God is helping and blessing David. (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Nathan](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Go](#)
- [Yahweh is](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then [Nathan](#) said to [the king](#), “[Go](#), do what is in your heart, for [Yahweh is](#) with you.”

## 2 Samuel 7:4

### the word of Yahweh came to Nathan, saying:

The idiom “the word of Yahweh came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave a message to Nathan. He said,” or “Yahweh spoke this message to Nathan:” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Nathan](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But that same night the word of [Yahweh](#) came to [Nathan](#), saying:

## 2 Samuel 7:5

**Go and tell David my servant, 'This is what Yahweh says: Will you build me a house in which to live?'**

This is the beginning of a quotation that contains quotations within it.

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> "Go and tell David my servant, 'This is what Yahweh says: Will you build me a house in which to live?'"

**Will you build me a house in which to live?**

Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that David is not the one to build a house for Yahweh. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You will not build a house for me" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**build me a house**

Here "house" means a temple. In 7:11 Yahweh will say that he will build a house for David. There "house" means a family. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 7:11.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Go
- David
- my servant
- Yahweh
- a house

## 2 Samuel 7:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- in a house
- the people of
- Israel
- out of Egypt
- have been moving about
- a tabernacle

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> For I have not lived in a house from the day that I brought up the people of Israel out of Egypt until this present day; instead, I have been moving about in a tent, a tabernacle.

## 2 Samuel 7:7

**did I ever say anything to any of Israel's leaders whom I appointed to shepherd my people Israel, saying, "Why have you not built me a house of cedar?"**

This has a quotation within a quotation. The direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "did I ever ask any of Israel's leaders, whom I appointed to shepherd my people Israel, why they had not built me a house of cedar?" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> In all places where I have moved among all the people of Israel, did I ever say anything to any of Israel's leaders whom I appointed to shepherd my people Israel, saying, "Why have you not built me a house of cedar?"

**did I ever say anything to any of Israel's leaders**

Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that he never asked any of Israel's leaders to build him a house. Alternate translation: "I never said anything to any of Israel's leaders" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**whom I appointed to shepherd my people Israel**

Those who are leaders of the people of Israel are spoken of as if they were shepherds and the people were sheep. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Why have you not built me a house of cedar?**

If Yahweh had asked the leaders this question, he would have been using a question to scold them for not building him a house of cedar. But, Yahweh said previously that he did not ask them this question. Alternate translation: "You should have built me a house of cedar." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I have moved
- the people of
- Israel
- Israel
- Israel
- s leaders
- I appointed
- my people
- a house of
- cedar



## 2 Samuel 7:8

### General Information:

Yahweh describes his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

### Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

**tell my servant David, ‘This is what Yahweh of hosts says: I took you ... so that you would be ruler over my people Israel.**

This has quotations within quotations. It may be necessary to translate the direct quotations as indirect quotations as in the UST. Alternate translation: “tell my servant David that I took him ... so that he would be ruler over my people Israel” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### tell my servant David

Yahweh is still telling the prophet Nathan what he should tell David.

### I took you from the pasture

David’s job as a shepherd is referred to by the place he watched his sheep. Alternate translation: “I took you from your job as a shepherd” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my servant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the sheep](#)
- [my people](#)
- [Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now then, tell [my servant](#) David, ‘This is what [Yahweh](#) of hosts says: I took you from the pasture, from following [the sheep](#), so that you would be ruler over [my people Israel](#).

## 2 Samuel 7:9

**I have been with you wherever you went. I have cut off all your enemies from before you. Now I will make your name great, like the names of the great ones of the earth**

This continues the quotations within quotations. It may be necessary to translate the direct quotations as indirect quotations as in the UST. Alternate translation: "I have been with him wherever he went.

I have cut off all his enemies from before him. Now I will make his name great, like the name of the great ones of the earth" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> I have been with you wherever [you went](#). [I have cut off](#) all [your enemies](#) from before you. Now I will make your [name](#) great, like the names of the great ones of the earth.

### I have been with you

Here "with you" means that Yahweh has helped and blessed David. (See: [Idiom](#))

### I have cut off all your enemies

Yahweh destroying David's enemies is spoken of as if Yahweh cut them off, as one would cut a piece of cloth or cut a branch from a tree. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### make your name great

Here "name" represents a person's reputation. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the great ones

The phrase "great ones" means famous persons.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you went](#)
- [I have cut off](#)
- [your enemies](#)
- [name](#)

## 2 Samuel 7:10

### General Information:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

### I will appoint a place

“I will choose a place”

### will plant them there

Yahweh causing the people to live in the land permanently and securely is spoken of as if he would plant them in the land. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### be troubled no more

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one will ever trouble them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I will appoint
- for my people
- Israel
- be troubled
- people
- oppress them

### ULT

**10** I will appoint a place for my people Israel and will plant them there, so that they may live in their own place and be troubled no more. No longer will wicked people oppress them, as they did before,

## 2 Samuel 7:11

### from the days

“from the time”

### I commanded judges

After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble.

#### ULT

**11** as they were doing from the days that I commanded judges to be over my people Israel. Now I will give you rest from all your enemies. Moreover, I, Yahweh declare to you that I will make you a house.

### to be over my people Israel

To be in authority is referred to as being over someone. Alternate translation: “to rule my people Israel” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Now I will give you rest from all your enemies ... declare to you that I will make you a house

If in [2 Samuel 7:8](#) and [2 Samuel 7:9](#) you translated the direct quotations as indirect quotation, then here you may need to translate “you” as “him” or “his.” Alternate translation: “Now I will give him rest from all his enemies ... declare to him that I will make him a house” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### I will give you rest from all your enemies

“I will give you safety from all your enemies.” Here “rest” is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “I will make all your enemies stop attacking you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### I will make you a house

Here the metonym “house” refers to David’s ancestors continuing on as the rulers of Israel. In [2 Samuel 7:4](#) Yahweh asked David if he would be the one to build a house for Yahweh. There “house” represented a temple. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 7:4. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I commanded...to be](#)
- [my people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Now I will give...rest](#)
- [your enemies](#)
- [I](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [a house](#)

## 2 Samuel 7:12

### General Information:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

### When your days are fulfilled and you lie down with your fathers

These two phrases have similar meanings and are combined for emphasis. They both are polite ways to refer to death and dying. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Euphemism](#))

### I will raise up a descendant after you

Yahweh appointing David's descendant is spoken of as if Yahweh would raise or lift him up. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### one who will come out from your body

This is an idiom that means the person will be David's descendant. (See: [Idiom](#))

### I will establish his kingdom

Here "his kingdom" represents his power to rule. Alternate translation: "I will make him to be a very powerful king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [with your fathers](#)
- [a descendant](#)
- [one...will come out](#)
- [his kingdom](#)

#### ULT

**12** When your days are fulfilled and you lie down [with your fathers](#), I will raise up [a descendant](#) after you, one who [will come out](#) from your body, and I will establish [his kingdom](#).

## 2 Samuel 7:13

### a house for my name

Here “name” refers to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “a permanent dwelling for me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever

Here “throne” represents the person’s power to rule as king. Alternate translation: “I will make his rule over Israel to last forever” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a house
- the throne of
- his kingdom

#### ULT

**13** He will build a house for my name, and I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever.

## 2 Samuel 7:14

### I will be a father to him, and he will be my son

The prophecy in 7:12-14 refers to Solomon, David's son. But, aspects of the prophecy will be fulfilled by Jesus. So, here it is best to translate the words "father" and "son" with your normal words for a biological father and son.

### Translation Words - ULT

- a father
- son
- the sons of
- men

### ULT

**14** I will be a father to him, and he will be my son. When he sins, I will discipline him with the rod of men and with the whipping of the sons of men.

## 2 Samuel 7:15

### General Information:

Yahweh finishes describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

### **But my covenant faithfulness will not leave him, as I took it from Saul**

The word “faithfulness” is an abstract noun that can be stated as “faithfully loving.” Alternate translation: “I will never stop faithfully loving him as I stopped loving Saul” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### **from before you**

If in [2 Samuel 7:8](#) and [2 Samuel 7:9](#) you translated the direct quotations as indirect quotation, then here you may need to translate “you” as “David” or “him” or “his” as in the UST. Alternate translation: “from before David. David’s house ... before him.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [But my covenant faithfulness](#)
- [Saul](#)

#### ULT

**15** [But my covenant faithfulness](#) will not leave him, as I took it from [Saul](#), whom I removed from before you.



## 2 Samuel 7:16

### Your house ... before you. Your throne

If in [2 Samuel 7:8](#) and [2 Samuel 7:9](#) you translated the direct quotations as indirect quotation, then here you may need to translate “you” as “David” or “him” or “his” as in the UST. Alternate translation: “David’s house ... before him. His throne” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

#### ULT

16 Your house and kingdom will be confirmed forever before you. Your throne will be established forever.’”

### Your house and kingdom will be confirmed forever before you. Your throne will be established forever.

These two sentences have similar meanings and emphasize that David’s dynasty will last forever. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Your house and kingdom will be confirmed forever before you

Here the word “house” represents David’s descendants, who will rule as kings. Here “kingdom” means about the same thing as “house.” This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “You will live to see me establish your family and their rule over the people of Israel forever” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Your throne will be established forever

Here “throne” represents the power to rule as king. Alternate translation: “I will cause your descendants to rule over Israel forever” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Your house](#)
- [Your throne](#)

## 2 Samuel 7:17

### all these words

“all these things.” This refers to what Yahweh had said.

### he told him about the entire vision

“he told him about everything Yahweh revealed to him”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Nathan
- David

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Nathan spoke to David and reported to him all these words and the entire vision.

## 2 Samuel 7:18

### Who am I, Yahweh God, and what is my family that you have brought me to this point?

David asks this question to express the deep emotion he felt from hearing Yahweh's proclamation. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "My family and I are not worthy of this honor, Yahweh God." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Then [David the king](#) went in and sat before [Yahweh](#) and said, "Who [am I](#), [Lord](#) Yahweh, and what [is my family](#) that you have brought me to this point?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [am I](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [is my family](#)

## 2 Samuel 7:19

### in your sight

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “in your judgment” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### your servant’s family

Here David refers to himself as “your servant.” This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “my family” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### for a great while to come

This speaks about time as if it were something that travels and arrives somewhere. Alternate translation: “and what will happen to them in the future” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### your servant

Here David refers to himself as “your servant.” This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “me” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Lord
- your servant
- s family
- future generations

#### ULT

**19** Now this was a small thing in your sight, Lord Yahweh. You have even spoken about [your servant’s family](#) for a great while to come, and have shown me [future generations](#), Lord Yahweh!

## 2 Samuel 7:20

### What more can I, David, say to you?

David uses this question to emphasize that he has nothing left to say to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "There is nothing more I can say to you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [have known](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [Lord](#)

### ULT

**20** What more can I, [David](#), say to you?  
You [have known your servant](#), [Lord](#)  
Yahweh.

## 2 Samuel 7:21

### For your word's sake

"Because of what you promised to do"

### to fulfill your own purpose

"to accomplish what you planned to do"

### to your servant

David refers to himself as "your servant." It can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "to me" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your servant](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> For your word's sake, and to fulfill your own purpose, you have done this great thing and revealed it to [your servant](#).

## 2 Samuel 7:22

### as we have heard with our own ears

The phrase “with our own ears” is used for emphasis. Alternate translation: “as we ourselves have heard” (See: [Idiom](#))

### as we have heard

Here “we” refers to David and the nation of Israel. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you are great](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [God](#)

#### ULT

**22** Therefore [you are great](#), [Lord](#) Yahweh, for there is no one like you, and there is no [God](#) besides you, as we have heard with our own ears.

## 2 Samuel 7:23

### What nation is like your people Israel, the one nation on earth whom you, God, went and rescued for yourself?

David uses a question emphasize that there is no other nation like Israel. Alternate translation: "There is no nation like your people Israel, the one nation on earth whom you, God, went and rescued for yourself." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### to make a name for yourself

Here "name" represents Yahweh's reputation. Alternate translation: "to make all people know who you are" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### for your land

Here "land" represents the people. Alternate translation: "for your people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### You drove out nations

Here "nations" represents the people groups that were living in Canaan. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your people](#)
- [a people](#)
- [your people](#)
- [the...nation](#)
- [You drove out nations](#)
- [you rescued](#)
- [from Egypt](#)
- [God](#)
- [and their gods](#)
- [you...went](#)
- [a name](#)
- [and fearful deeds](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> What nation is like [your people](#) Israel, the one [nation](#) on earth whom you, [God, went](#) and rescued for yourself? You did this so that they would become [a people](#) for yourself, to make [a name](#) for yourself, and to do great [and fearful deeds](#) for your land. [You drove out nations and their gods](#) from before [your people](#), whom [you rescued from Egypt](#).



## 2 Samuel 7:24

### General Information:

David continues to talk to Yahweh.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- as your own people
- as your own people
- Yahweh
- God

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> You established Israel as your own people forever, and you, Yahweh, became their God.

## 2 Samuel 7:25

### So now

Here “now” does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

**may the promise that you made concerning your servant and his family be established forever**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “may you do what you promised to me and my family, and may your promise never change” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### your servant and his family

David is speaking about himself in the third person. This can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: “me and my family” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [his family](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> So now, [Yahweh God](#), may the promise that you made concerning [your servant](#) and [his family](#) be established forever. Do as you have spoken.

## 2 Samuel 7:26

### May your name be forever great

Here “name” represents Yahweh’s reputation. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the house of me, David, your servant

Here “house” represents family. Alternate translation: “my family”  
(See: [Metonymy](#))

### is established before you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “is secure because of you” or “continues because of you”  
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your name](#)
- [Yahweh...is the](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [while the house of me](#)
- [David](#)
- [your servant](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> May [your name](#) be forever great, so the people will say, ‘[Yahweh](#) of hosts [is the God of Israel](#),’ while the house of [me, David, your servant](#) is established before you.

## 2 Samuel 7:27

### to your servant that you will build him a house

David refers to himself as “your servant.” Alternate translation: “to me that you will build me a house” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### that you will build him a house

Here the metonym “house” refers to David’s ancestors continuing on as the rulers of Israel. In [2 Samuel 7:4](#) Yahweh asked David if he would be the one to build a house for Yahweh. There “house” represented a temple. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 7:4. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### house

Here “house” represents David’s family. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [have revealed to](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [your servant](#) (2)
- [a house](#)
- [courage](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> For you, [Yahweh](#) of hosts, [the God of Israel](#), [have revealed to your servant](#) that you will build him a house. That is why I, [your servant](#), have found [courage](#) to pray to you.

## 2 Samuel 7:28

### Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

### **your words are trustworthy**

“I trust what you say”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- God
- trustworthy
- your servant

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Now, Lord Yahweh, you are God, and your words are trustworthy, and you have made this good promise to your servant.

## 2 Samuel 7:29

### with your blessing your servant's house will be blessed forever

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will continue to bless my family forever" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### your servant's house

Here David refers to himself as "your servant." Alternate translation: "my house" or "my family" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to bless
- will be blessed
- the house of
- s house
- your servant
- your servant
- Lord

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Now then, let it please you to bless the house of your servant, so that it may continue forever before you. For you, Lord Yahweh, have said these things, and with your blessing your servant's house will be blessed forever."

## **2 Samuel 8**

### **2 Samuel 8 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter returns to the theme of the expansion of David's kingdom.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **God enabled victory**

God enabled David to conquer all the surrounding nations. Much of the loot and tribute David received, he saved for the temple that his son would build.

## 2 Samuel 8:1

### David attacked

Here David represents his soldiers. Alternate translation: "David and his soldiers attacked" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David \(2\)](#)
- [the Philistines](#)
- [the Philistines](#)
- [from the control of](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> After this it came about that [David](#) attacked [the Philistines](#) and defeated them. So [David](#) took Metheg Ammah [from the control of the Philistines](#).



## 2 Samuel 8:2

### Then he defeated

Here “he” refers to David who represents his soldiers. Alternate translation: “Then they defeated” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### measured their men with a line ... He measured off two lines to put to death, and one full line to keep alive

Here the “line” is a “rope.” David had the soldiers lie down on the ground to be measured and sorted into three groups. The men in two groups were killed, and in the third, they were allowed to live.

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then he defeated [Moab](#) and measured their men with a line by making them lie down [on the ground](#). He measured off two lines [to put to death](#), and one full line to keep alive. So [the Moabites](#) became [servants](#) to David and began to pay him [tribute](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#)
- [the Moabites](#)
- [on the ground](#)
- [to put to death](#)
- [servants](#)
- [tribute](#)

## 2 Samuel 8:3

### David then defeated Hadadezer

Here both "David" and "Hadadezer" represent their armies.  
Alternate translation: "David and his army then defeated the army of Hadadezer" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Hadadezer ... Rehob

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Zobah

This is the name of a region in Aram. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### to recover his rule

"to regain control over a region" or "to recapture a region"

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- son of
- the king of
- to recover
- his rule

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> David then defeated Hadadezer son of Rehob, the king of Zobah, as Hadadezer was traveling to recover his rule by the Euphrates River.

## 2 Samuel 8:4

### 1,700 chariots

“one thousand seven hundred chariots” (See: [Numbers](#))

### twenty thousand footmen

“20,000 footmen” (See: [Numbers](#))

### David hamstrung

This is a practice where the tendons in the backs of the legs are cut so that the horses cannot run.

### reserved enough

“set aside enough” or “saved enough”

### a hundred chariots

“100 chariots” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> [David](#) captured from him 1700 chariots and 20000 footmen. [David](#) hamstrung all the chariot horses, but reserved enough of them for 100 chariots.

## 2 Samuel 8:5

### David killed

Here David represents his soldiers. Alternate translation: "David and his soldiers killed" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### twenty-two thousand Aramean men

"22,000 Aramean men" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [king of](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When the Arameans of Damascus came to help Hadadezer [king of](#) Zobah, [David](#) killed 22000 Aramean men.

## 2 Samuel 8:6

### put garrisons in Aram

“ordered large groups of his soldiers to remain in Aram”

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- Then...put
- servants
- tribute
- Yahweh
- gave victory to
- he went

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then David put garrisons in Aram of Damascus, and the Arameans became servants to him and brought him tribute. Yahweh gave victory to David wherever he went.

## 2 Samuel 8:7

### David took

Here “David” is probably a metonym for his soldiers. Alternate translation: “David’s soldiers took” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [golden](#)
- [s servants](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> [David](#) took the [golden](#) shields that were on [Hadadezer’s servants](#) and brought them [to Jerusalem](#).

## 2 Samuel 8:8

### King David took

Here “David” is probably a metonym for his soldiers. Alternate translation: “King David’s soldiers took” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Tebah and Berothai

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [King](#)
- [David](#)
- [bronze](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> From Tebah and Berothai, cities of Hadadezer, [King David](#) took very much [bronze](#).

## 2 Samuel 8:9

### Tou

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Hamath

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### David had defeated

Here “David” is a metonym for his army. Alternate translation: “David’s army had defeated” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [king of](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> When Tou, [king of](#) Hamath, heard that [David](#) had defeated all the army of Hadadezer,



## 2 Samuel 8:10

### Tou ... Hadoram

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [his son](#)
- [King](#)
- [David](#)
- [Hadoram...with himself](#)
- [of silver](#)
- [gold](#)
- [bronze](#)

### ULT

**10** Tou sent Hadoram [his son](#) to [King David](#) to greet him and to bless him, because David had fought against Hadadezer and defeated him, and because Hadadezer had waged war against Tou. [Hadoram](#) brought [with himself](#) objects of [silver](#), [gold](#), and [bronze](#).

## 2 Samuel 8:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- King
- David
- set aside
- set aside
- to Yahweh
- the silver
- and gold
- the nations
- he conquered

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> King David set aside these objects to Yahweh, together with the silver and gold from all the nations that he conquered—

## 2 Samuel 8:12

### and Amalek

“and the Amalekites”

### the plundered goods

These are the valuable items that soldiers take from the people they defeated.

### Hadadezer son of Rehob, the king of Zobah

See how you translated these names in [2 Samuel 8:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the people of](#)
- [son of](#)
- [the king of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> from Aram, Moab, [the people of](#) Ammon, the Philistines, and Amalek, along with all of the plundered goods of Hadadezer [son of](#) Rehob, [the king of](#) Zobah.

## 2 Samuel 8:13

### David's name was well known

Here "name" refers to David's reputation. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "David was very famous" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Valley of Salt

This is the name of a place. Its exact location is unknown. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### eighteen thousand men

"18,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [s name](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> [David's name](#) was well known when he returned from conquering the Arameans in the Valley of Salt, with their 18000 men.

## 2 Samuel 8:14

### He placed garrisons throughout all of Edom

“He ordered groups of his soldiers to remain in areas throughout all of Edom”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- He placed
- servants
- Yahweh
- gave victory to
- David
- he went

#### ULT

**14** He placed garrisons throughout all of Edom, and all the Edomites became servants to him. Yahweh gave victory to David wherever he went.

## 2 Samuel 8:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- he
- reigned
- Israel
- justice
- his people

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> David reigned over all Israel, and he administered justice and righteousness to all his people.

## 2 Samuel 8:16

### Joab ... Zeruiah

See how you translated these names in [2 Samuel 2:13](#).

### Ahilud was recorder

A recorder was a person who spoke to the people and told them the king's announcements. Alternate translation: "Ahilud was the herald" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Ahilud

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [son of](#)
- [son of \(2\)](#)
- [and Jehoshaphat](#)

#### ULT

**16** [Joab son of Zeruiah](#) was the commander of the army, [and Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud](#) was recorder.

## 2 Samuel 8:17

### Ahitub ... Ahimelech ... Seraiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Zadok](#)
- [son of](#)
- [son of \(2\)](#)
- [Abiathar](#)
- [were priests](#)
- [was scribe](#)

### ULT

**17** [Zadok son of Ahitub](#) and [Ahimelech son of Abiathar](#) were [priests](#), and [Seraiah](#) was [scribe](#).



## 2 Samuel 8:18

### Benaiah ... Jehoiada

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Kerethites ... Pelethites

These are names of people-groups. These people were David's bodyguards. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Benaiah
- son of
- and...s sons
- Jehoiada
- was in charge of the Kerethites
- David
- the chief officials at the king's hand

### ULT

**18** Benaiah son of Jehoiada was in charge of the Kerethites and Pelethites, and David's sons were the chief officials at the king's hand.<sup>[1]</sup>

8:18 <sup>[1]</sup>; but the MT has, .

## 2 Samuel 9

### 2 Samuel 9 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter is another interruption to the story of David expanding his kingdom. David is concerned with fulfilling his oath to Jonathan's descendants.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### David's vow

David determined to fulfill his vow to Jonathan to care for Jonathan's descendants. He found Jonathan's son and told him he would treat him as if he was one of his sons. He restored all of Saul's property to him and had him eat every day at the king's table. (See: [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#) and [vow](#) and [restore](#), [restoration](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical question and metaphor

Jonathan's son expressed his surprise and feeling of unworthiness with a rhetorical question: "What is your servant, that you should look with favor on such a dead dog as I am?" and by a metaphor comparing himself to "a dead dog." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

## 2 Samuel 9:1

### for Jonathan's sake

"because of my love for Jonathan"

### Jonathan's sake

Jonathan was Saul's son and David's best friend.

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Saul
- in...s family
- kindness

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> David said, "Is there anyone left in Saul's family to whom I may show kindness for Jonathan's sake?"

## 2 Samuel 9:2

### Ziba

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### I am your servant

Ziba calls himself “your servant” to show great respect to David.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Saul
- a servant
- Yes. I am your servant
- and they called
- David
- The king

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> There was in Saul's family a servant whose name was Ziba, and they called him to David. The king said to him, “Are you Ziba?” He replied, “Yes. I am your servant.”

## 2 Samuel 9:3

### I may show the kindness of God

The abstract noun “kindness” can be stated as “kind.” Alternate translation: “I may be kind as I promised God I would be”

### who is lame in his feet

“whose feet are damaged.” The word “feet” here refers to the ability to walk. Alternate translation: “who is unable to walk” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> So [the king](#) said, “Is there anyone left of [Saul’s family](#) to whom I may show [the kindness of God](#)?” Ziba replied to [the king](#), “Jonathan still has [a son](#), who is lame in his feet.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [of...s family](#)
- [the kindness of](#)
- [God](#)
- [a son](#)

## 2 Samuel 9:4

### Machir ... Ammiel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Lo Debar

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [in the house of](#)
- [son of](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> [The king](#) said to him, "Where is he?"  
Ziba replied to [the king](#), "Look, he is [in the house of](#) Machir [son of](#) Ammiel in Lo Debar."

## 2 Samuel 9:5

### King David sent

It is understood that David sent messengers. (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- King
- David
- out of the house of
- son of

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then King David sent and had him brought out of the house of Machir son of Ammiel from Lo Debar.

## 2 Samuel 9:6

### Mephibosheth

See how you translated this in [2 Samuel 4:4](#).

### came to David

The word “came” can be translated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### I am your servant

Mephibosheth refers to himself as “your servant” to show great honor to David.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)
- [son of \(2\)](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [and bowed](#)
- [his face](#)
- [to the floor in honor of David](#)
- [your servant](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So Mephibosheth [son of Jonathan son of Saul](#), came to [David](#) and [bowed down his face to the floor in honor of David](#). [David](#) said, “Mephibosheth.” He answered, “See, I am [your servant!](#)”



## 2 Samuel 9:7

### for Jonathan your father's sake

"because I loved your father, Jonathan"

### you will always eat at my table

Here "my table" represents being together with David or in his presence. Eating with the king at his table was a great honor.

Alternate translation: "you will always eat with me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> David said to him, "Do not be afraid, for I will surely show you kindness for Jonathan your father's sake, and I will restore to you all the land of Saul your grandfather, and you will always eat bread at my table."

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- be afraid
- kindness
- your father
- your grandfather
- and I will restore
- Saul
- will...eat
- bread

## 2 Samuel 9:8

### What is your servant, that you should look with favor on such a dead dog as I am?

This rhetorical question shows that Mephibosheth understands that he is not important enough for the king to take care of him. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am like a dead dog. I do not deserve for you to be kind to me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Mephibosheth bowed and said, "What is your servant, that you should look on such a dead dog as I am?"

### such a dead dog

Here Mephibosheth represents the line of Saul, and he compares himself to a "dead dog." Dogs were feral animals, not cared for, and of little importance. A dead dog would be considered even less important. Alternate translation: "such a person like me who is worthless as a dead dog" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Mephibosheth bowed](#)
- [is your servant](#)
- [dead](#)

## 2 Samuel 9:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Then...called
- Saul
- to Saul
- s servant
- his family
- your master
- to...s grandson

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then **the king called** to Ziba, **Saul's servant**, and said to him, "All that belonged **to Saul** and **his family** I have given to **your master's grandson**."

## 2 Samuel 9:10

### must always eat at my table

Here “my table” represents being together with David or in his presence. Eating with the king at his table was a great honor.  
Alternate translation: “must always eat with me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Now Ziba ... servants

Here “now” makes a break in the main story line. The narrator gives background information about Ziba. (See: [Background Information](#))

### fifteen sons and twenty servants

“15 sons and 20 servants” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your sons](#)
- [s grandson](#)
- [s grandson](#)
- [sons](#)
- [and your servants](#)
- [servants](#)
- [your master](#)
- [your master](#)
- [food](#)
- [must...eat](#)
- [to eat](#)
- [must...eat](#)

### ULT

**10** You, [your sons](#), and [your servants](#) must till the land for him and you must harvest the crops so that [your master's grandson](#) will have [food to eat](#). For Mephibosheth, [your master's grandson](#), [must always eat](#) at my table.”  
Now Ziba had 15 [sons](#) and 20 [servants](#).

## 2 Samuel 9:11

### Your servant will do all that my master the king commands his servant

Ziba refers to himself as “your servant” and refers to David as “my master.” Alternate translation: “I, your servant will do all that you, my king, command me to do” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- king
- his servant
- Your servant
- my master
- commands
- he will eat
- of the...s sons

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Then Ziba said to the king, “Your servant will do all that my master the king commands his servant.” The king added, “As for Mephibosheth he will eat at my table, as one of the king’s sons.”

## 2 Samuel 9:12

### Mika

This is the name of the son of Mephibosheth. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### All who lived in the house of Ziba

Here “house” represents Ziba’s family. Alternate translation: “All of Ziba’s family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a...son](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [servants](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Mephibosheth had a young [son](#) whose name was Mika. All who lived in [the house of](#) Ziba were [servants](#) of Mephibosheth.

## 2 Samuel 9:13

### he always ate at the king's table

Here "table" represents being together with David or in his presence. Eating with the king at his table was a great honor. Alternate translation: "he always ate with the king at his table" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> So Mephibosheth lived [in Jerusalem](#), and he always [ate](#) at [the king's](#) table, though he was lame in both his feet.

### though he was lame in both his feet

"thouge both of his feet were damaged." Here "feet" represents the ability to walk. Alternate translation: "though he was unable to walk" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [ate](#)
- [the king](#)

## 2 Samuel 10

### 2 Samuel 10 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The chapter records the last expansion of David's kingdom. This chapter is also the beginning of a section dealing with the war between Israel and Ammon.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Shame

It was apparently the cause of shame or embarrassment in ancient Ammon to have their beards shaved off or to have their garments cut off. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Metaphor

The Ammon people used a metaphor comparing themselves to a bad smell: "they had become a stench to David" when they realized they had made David very angry. (See: [Metaphor](#))



## 2 Samuel 10:1

### Hanun

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the people of
- his son
- died
- and that...became king

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> It came about later that [the king of the people of Ammon died, and that Hanun his son became king](#) in his place.

## 2 Samuel 10:2

### Hanun ... Nahash

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- His
- kindness
- kindness
- the land of
- son of
- the people of
- his father
- his father
- his servants
- servants
- to comfort Hanun

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> David said, "I will show kindness to Hanun son of Nahash, as his father showed kindness to me." So David sent his servants to comfort Hanun concerning his father. His servants entered the land of the people of Ammon.

## 2 Samuel 10:3

### Do you really think that ... you?

The leaders use a question to suggest to the king that he should not trust David. Alternate translation: "You are wrong to think that ... you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### to spy

to secretly learn information about someone else

### Has not David ... overthrow it?

The leaders use a question to suggest to the king that he should not trust David. Alternate translation: "You need to know that David ... overthrow it." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### in order to overthrow it

Here "it" refers to the city which represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: "in order to conquer us" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the city

Here "the city" refers to Rabbah, the capital city of the Ammonites.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the leaders of](#)
- [the people of](#)
- [their master](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [your father](#)
- [men to comfort](#)
- [his servants](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But [the leaders of the people of Ammon](#) said to Hanun [their master](#), "Do you really think that [David](#) is honoring [your father](#) because he has sent [men to comfort](#) you? Has not [David](#) sent [his servants](#) to you to look at the city, to spy it out, in order to overthrow it?"

## 2 Samuel 10:4

### shaved off half their beards

This act was meant as an insult to humiliate the men. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- s servants
- cut

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So Hanun took David's servants, shaved off half their beards, cut off their garments up to their buttocks, and sent them away.

## 2 Samuel 10:5

### were deeply ashamed

Here “deeply” is an idiom that means “very.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### then return

It is understood that they should return to Jerusalem. (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ashamed](#)
- [The king](#)
- [at Jericho](#)
- [and then return](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When they explained this to David, he sent to meet with them, for the men were deeply [ashamed](#). [The king](#) said, “Stay [at Jericho](#) until your beards have grown back, [and then return](#).”

## 2 Samuel 10:6

### they had become a stench to David

The phrase “become a stench” is a metaphor for “they had become offensive.” Alternate translation: “they had become offensive like a bad smell to David” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Beth Rehob ... Zobah ... Maacah ... Tob

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### twenty thousand ... a thousand ... twelve thousand

“20,000...1,000...12,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the people of](#)
- [the people of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Maacah](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When [the people of](#) Ammon saw that they had become a stench to David, [the people of](#) Ammon sent messengers and hired the Arameans of Beth Rehob and Zobah, 20000 foot soldiers, and [the king of Maacah](#) with 1000 men, and the men of Tob with 12000 men.

## 2 Samuel 10:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Joab
- soldiers

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> When David heard of it, he sent Joab and all the army of soldiers.

## 2 Samuel 10:8

### to their city gate

Here “the city” refers to Rabbah, the capital city of the Ammonites.

### Translation Words - ULT

- The Ammonites
- came out
- to their city gate
- and Maacah

### ULT

8 The Ammonites came out and formed a line of battle at the entrance to their city gate, while the Arameans of Zobah and of Rehob, and the men of Tob and Maacah, stood by themselves in the open fields.



## 2 Samuel 10:9

### General Information:

The battle with the Arameans and Ammon continues.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- facing
- Israel

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> When Joab saw the battle lines facing him both in front and behind, he chose some of Israel's best fighters and arranged them against the Arameans.

## 2 Samuel 10:10

### The rest of his people he put into the hand of Abishai his brother

“He put Abishai his brother in charge of the rest of the army”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- his people
- into the hand of
- his brother
- the sons of

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> The rest of his people he put into the hand of Abishai his brother, and he arranged them against the sons of Ammon.

## 2 Samuel 10:11

### General Information:

Joab gets the army ready for battle.

### for me, then you, Abishai, must rescue me

Here “me” refers to Joab. Joab and Abishai represents themselves and their armies. Alternate translation: “for us, then you, Abishai, and your army must rescue us” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- are too strong
- are too strong
- the sons of

### ULT

**11** Joab said, “If the Arameans [are too strong](#) for me, then you, Abishai, must rescue me. But if [the sons of Ammon are too strong](#) for you, then I will come and rescue you.”

## 2 Samuel 10:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Be strong
- our people
- our God
- for Yahweh
- what is good

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Be strong, and let us show ourselves to be strong for our people and for the cities of our God, for Yahweh will do what is good for his purpose.”

## 2 Samuel 10:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- and the soldiers of...army

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> So Joab and the soldiers of his army advanced to the battle against the Arameans, who were forced to flee before the army of Israel.

## 2 Samuel 10:14

### from Abishai

Here Abishai represents himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: "from Abishai and his soldiers" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### into the city

Here "the city" refers to Rabbah, the capital city of the Ammonites.

### went back to Jerusalem

"returned to Jerusalem"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [When the sons of](#)
- [the people of](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Then...returned](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

**14** [When the sons of](#) Ammon saw that the Arameans had fled, they also fled from Abishai and went back into the city. Then [Joab returned](#) from [the people of](#) Ammon and went back to [Jerusalem](#).

## 2 Samuel 10:15

### When the Arameans saw that they were being defeated by Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “when the Arameans realized that the Israelites were defeating them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> When the Arameans saw that they were being defeated by [Israel](#), they gathered themselves together again.

## 2 Samuel 10:16

### Hadarezer ... Shobak

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### from beyond the Euphrates River

This means the east side of the Euphrates River.

### They came to Helam

Here “came to” can be translated as “went to” or “gathered at” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Helam

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then...sent for](#)
- [the commander of](#)

#### ULT

**16** Then Hadarezer [sent for](#) Aramean troops from beyond the Euphrates River. They came to Helam, and Shobak, [the commander of](#) Hadarezer’s army, went before them.



## 2 Samuel 10:17

### When David was told this

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When David heard about this” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### gathered all Israel together

Here “Israel” represents the army of Israel. Alternate translation: “assembled all the army of Israel together” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Helam

See how you translated this man’s name in [2 Samuel 10:16](#).

### against David and fought him

Here David represents himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: “against David and his soldiers and fought them” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [crossed](#)
- [the Jordan](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

17 When David was told this, he gathered all [Israel](#) together, [crossed the Jordan](#), and arrived at Helam. The Arameans arranged themselves in battle lines against [David](#) and fought him.

## 2 Samuel 10:18

### David killed

Here “David” is a synecdoche for himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: “David and his soldiers killed” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### seven hundred ... forty thousand

“700...40,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Shobak the commander of their army was wounded and died there

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The Israelites wounded Shobak the commander of the Aramean army, and he died there” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Shobak

See how you translated this man’s name in [2 Samuel 10:16](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [David](#)
- [the commander of](#)
- [and died](#)

#### ULT

**18** The Arameans fled from [Israel](#), and [David](#) killed 700 of their men in chariots and 40000 horsemen. Shobak [the commander of](#) their army was wounded and died there.

## 2 Samuel 10:19

### Hadarezer

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 10:16](#).

### saw that they were defeated by Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "realized that the Israelites had defeated them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the kings](#)
- [who were servants of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [So...were afraid](#)
- [the people of](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> When all [the kings who were servants of](#) Hadarezer saw that they were defeated by [Israel](#), they made peace with [Israel](#) and became their subjects. [So](#) the Arameans [were afraid](#) to help [the people of](#) Ammon anymore.

## 2 Samuel 11

### 2 Samuel 11 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a new section of David's life. God punished David by allowing his family to have many problems.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### David's adultery and the murder of Uriah

The army of Israel defeated the army of Ammon and then they besieged Ammon's capital while David stayed in Jerusalem. One day, David saw a beautiful woman, named Bathsheba, bathing. He committed adultery with her. When she became pregnant, David tried to cover up his sin. When this did not work, he had her husband killed in battle. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

## 2 Samuel 11:1

### It came about in the springtime

“It happened in the springtime.” This introduces a new event in the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### at the time

“at the time of year”

### David sent out Joab, his servants, and all the army of Israel

David sent them out to war. This can be stated clearly. Also, the word “his” refers to David. Alternate translation: “David sent Joab, his servants, and all the army of Israel to war” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the army of Ammon

“the Ammonite army”

### Rabbah

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [when...normally go to war](#)
- [kings](#)
- [David](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [his servants](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Rabbah](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> It came about in the springtime, at the time [when kings normally go to war](#), that [David](#) sent out [Joab, his servants](#), and all the army of [Israel](#). They destroyed [the sons of Ammon](#) and besieged [Rabbah](#). But David stayed [in Jerusalem](#).

## 2 Samuel 11:2

### So it came about

“So it happened” or “So it came to pass.” The author uses this phrase to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### a woman who was bathing

The woman was not on the roof, she would have been bathing outside in the courtyard of her house. Alternate translation: “a woman who was bathing in the courtyard of her house” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So it came about one evening that [David](#) got up from his bed and walked on the roof of [his palace](#). From there he saw a woman who was bathing, and the woman was very [beautiful](#) to look at.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [his palace](#)
- [his palace](#)
- [beautiful](#)

## 2 Samuel 11:3

### So David sent

Here the word “sent” means that David sent a messenger. Alternate translation: “So David sent a messenger” (See: [Idiom](#))

### he asked people who would know about the woman

David was trying to find out who the woman was. The word “he” refers to David, but is a metonym for the messenger that David sent. The messenger was to ask the people for information about her. Alternate translation: “the messenger asked the people who knew her about who she was” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Is not this Bathsheba ... and is she not the wife of Uriah the Hittite?

This question gives information and can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “This is Bathsheba ... and she is the wife of Uriah the Hittite.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [the Hittite](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> So [David](#) sent and he inquired about the woman. Someone said, “Is not this [Bathsheba](#), the daughter of Eliam, and is she not the wife of [Uriah the Hittite](#)?”

## 2 Samuel 11:4

### took her

David actually sent messengers, and they took her and brought her to him. Alternate translation: “they brought her to him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### she came in to him

She came into his palace and into his bedroom. Alternate translation: “she came into the place where he was” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### he lay with her

This is a polite way of saying that he had sexual relations with her. You may need to use a different euphemism in your language. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### menstruation

the time when a woman bleeds from her womb

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [messengers](#)
- [had just purified herself](#)
- [Then she returned](#)
- [her house](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> [David](#) sent [messengers](#) and took her; she came in to him, and he lay with her (for she [had just purified herself](#) from menstruation). [Then she returned](#) to [her house](#).



## 2 Samuel 11:5

**she sent and told David; she said, “I am pregnant.”**

Here the word “sent” means that she sent a messenger to tell David that she was pregnant. Alternate translation: “she sent a messenger to David, and the messenger told David that she was pregnant” (See: [Idiom](#))

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> The woman conceived, and she sent and told David; she said, “[I am](#) pregnant.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I am](#)

## 2 Samuel 11:6

### Then David sent

Here the word “sent” means that David sent a messenger. Alternate translation: “Then David sent a messenger” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [the Hittite](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then [David](#) sent to [Joab](#) saying, “Send me [Uriah the Hittite](#).” So [Joab](#) sent [Uriah](#) to [David](#).

## 2 Samuel 11:7

### how Joab was, how the army was doing, and how the war was going

David was asking if Joab and the army were well and about the progress of the war. Alternate translation: “if Joab was well, if other soldiers were well, and how the war was progressing” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Uriah](#)
- [David](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [the army](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> When [Uriah](#) arrived, [David](#) asked him how [Joab](#) was, how [the army](#) was doing, and how the war was going.

## 2 Samuel 11:8

### Go down to your house

The phrase **go down** could mean: (1) Uriah's house was located at a lower elevation than the king's palace or (2) Uriah's house was of lesser importance than the king's palace. Alternate translation: "Go to your house" (See: [Idiom](#))

### wash your feet

This phrase is a metonym for returning home to rest for the night after working all day. Alternate translation: "rest for the night" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the king sent a gift for Uriah

David sent someone to bring the gift to Uriah. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the king sent someone to take a gift to Uriah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [to Uriah](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [to your house](#)
- [the...s palace](#)
- [and wash](#)
- [So...left](#)
- [and...sent](#)
- [king](#)
- [the king](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> David said to Uriah, "Go down to your house and wash your feet." So Uriah left the king's palace, and the king sent a gift for Uriah after he left.

## 2 Samuel 11:9

### his master

The word “his” refers to Uriah and the word “master” refers to David.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Uriah
- the king
- s palace
- his house
- the servants of
- his master

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But Uriah slept at the door of the king's palace with all the servants of his master, and he did not go down to his house.

## 2 Samuel 11:10

### Have you not come from a journey? Why did you not go down to your house?

This rhetorical question is used to show David's surprise that Uriah did not visit his wife. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "After coming from such a long journey, you should have gone down to your house." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Uriah](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [his house](#)
- [your house](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> When they told David, "[Uriah](#) did not go down to [his house](#)," [David](#) said to [Uriah](#), "Have you not come from a journey? Why did you not go down to [your house](#)?"

## 2 Samuel 11:11

### Israel and Judah

This refers to their armies. Alternate translation: “the armies of Israel and Judah” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### How then can I go into my house ... with my wife?

This rhetorical question is used to emphasize Uriah’s refusal to visit his wife and can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation:

“It would be wrong for me to go into my house ... with my wife while the other soldiers in my army are in danger.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### to lie with my wife

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “to have sexual relations with my wife” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### As sure as you are alive, I will not do this

Uriah swears a strong promise that he will not go home to his wife as long as the rest of the soldiers are at war. He makes this promise by comparing the truth of his promise to the certainty that the king was alive. Alternate translation: “I solemnly promise that I will not do this” (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Uriah](#)
- [David](#)
- [The Box](#)
- [and Judah](#)
- [my master](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [and...s servants](#)
- [open](#)
- [my house](#)
- [As sure as you are alive](#)
- [As sure as you are alive](#)

### ULT

11 [Uriah](#) answered [David](#), “[The Box](#), and [Israel and Judah](#) are staying in tents, and [my master Joab](#) and my master’s [servants](#) are camped in an [open](#) field. How then can I go into [my house](#) to eat and to drink and to lie with my wife? [As sure as you are alive](#), I will not do this.”

## 2 Samuel 11:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Uriah
- Uriah
- in Jerusalem

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> So David said to Uriah, “Stay here today also, and tomorrow I will let you leave.” So Uriah stayed in Jerusalem that day and the next day.



## 2 Samuel 11:13

### he ate and drank before him

“Uriah ate and drank with David”

### down to his house

Possible meanings of the word **down** are: (1) Uriah’s house was located at a lower elevation than the king’s palace or (2) Uriah’s house was of lesser importance than the king’s palace. See how you translated the similar phrase “down to your house” in [2 Samuel 11:8](#). Alternate translation: “to his house” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### ULT

**13** When David called him, he ate and drank before him, and David made him drunk. At evening Uriah went out to sleep on his bed with the servants of his master; he did not go down to his house.

### Translation Words - ULT

- When...called
- David
- he ate
- Uriah went out
- the servants of
- his master
- his house

## 2 Samuel 11:14

### sent it by the hand of Uriah

The phrase “the hand of Uriah” refers to Uriah himself. Alternate translation: “sent Uriah himself to deliver it to him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [Uriah](#)

### ULT

**14** So in the morning [David](#) wrote a letter to [Joab](#), and sent it [by the hand of Uriah](#).

## 2 Samuel 11:15

### very front of the most intense battle

“very front of the battle line where the fighting is the worst”

### withdraw from him

“command the soldiers to back away from him”

### he may be hit and killed

“he may be wounded and killed”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Uriah
- front of
- most intense
- and then withdraw
- and killed

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> David wrote in the letter saying, “Set Uriah at the very front of the most intense battle, and then withdraw from him, that he may be hit and killed.”

## 2 Samuel 11:16

### the siege upon the city

The word “siege” can be expressed with the verbs “surround” and “attack.” Alternate translation: “his army surround and attack the city” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [he knew](#)
- [strongest](#)

### ULT

**16** So as [Joab](#) watched the siege upon the city, he assigned [Uriah](#) to the place where [he knew](#) the [strongest](#) enemy soldiers would be fighting.

## 2 Samuel 11:17

### some of the soldiers of David fell

The word “fell” is a polite way to refer to the soldiers being killed. Alternate translation: “David’s soldiers were killed” or “they killed some of David’s soldiers” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### and Uriah the Hittite was also killed there

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “including Uriah the Hittite” or “and the men of the city also killed Uriah the Hittite” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

17 [When](#) the men of the city [went out](#) and fought against [Joab’s army](#), [some](#) of the soldiers of [David fell](#), and [Uriah the Hittite](#) was also [killed there](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [When...went out](#)
- [Joab’s army](#)
- [some](#)
- [David](#)
- [fell](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [the Hittite](#)
- [and...was...killed there](#)

## 2 Samuel 11:18

### Joab sent word to David

The phrase “sent word” means that he sent a messenger to give a report. Alternate translation: “Joab sent a messenger to David to give a report” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

**18** When [Joab](#) sent word to David about everything concerning the war,

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)

## 2 Samuel 11:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- he commanded
- the king

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> he commanded the messenger, saying, "When you have finished telling all the things concerning the war to the king,

## 2 Samuel 11:20

### Why did you go so near ... from the wall?

Joab says that David may rebuke him by asking these rhetorical questions. These questions may be written as statements. Alternate translation: "You should not have gone so near to the city to fight. You should have known that they would shoot from the wall." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> it may happen [that the king](#) will become [angry](#), and he will say to you, 'Why did you go so near to the city to fight? [Did you](#) not [know](#) that they would shoot from the wall?'

### shoot from the wall

This refers to men of the city shooting arrows down at their enemy from the top of the city wall. Alternate translation: "shoot arrows at you from the top of the city wall" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [that the king](#)
- [angry](#)
- [Did you...know](#)



## 2 Samuel 11:21

### Who killed Abimelech son of Jerub-Besheth?

Joab says that David may rebuke him by asking these rhetorical questions. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Remember how Abimelech son of Jerub-Besheth was killed!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Abimelech son of Jerub-Besheth

This is the name of a man. His father is also know by the name Gideon. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Did not a woman cast an upper millstone on him from the wall, so that he died at Thebez?

Joab says that David may rebuke him by asking these rhetorical questions. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Remember he died at Thebez when a woman cast an upper millstone on him from the top of the wall." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### millstone

a heavy stone that would roll, used to crush grain for making bread

### from the wall

"from the top of the city wall"

### Thebez

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Why did you go so near the wall?

Joab says that David may rebuke him by asking these rhetorical questions. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have gone so near the wall!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abimelech](#)
- [son of](#)
- [so that he died](#)
- [Your servant](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [the Hittite](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Who killed [Abimelech son of Jerub-Besheth](#)? Did not a woman cast an upper millstone on him from the wall, [so that he died](#) at Thebez? Why did you go so near the wall? Then you must answer, 'Your servant [Uriah the Hittite](#) is dead also.'

## 2 Samuel 11:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> So the messenger left and went to David and told him everything that [Joab](#) had sent him to say.

## 2 Samuel 11:23

### the gate

“the city gate”

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- they came out...into
- the gate

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Then the messenger said to David, “The enemy were stronger than we were at first; they came out to us into the field, but we drove them back to the entrance of the gate.”

## 2 Samuel 11:24

### their shooters shot

“their shooters shot arrows”

### some of the king’s servants were killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they killed some of the king’s servants” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### king’s servants

Here “servants” refers to soldiers, not slaves, because soldiers were servants of the king.

### your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they killed your servant Uriah the Hittite” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your soldiers](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [the king](#)
- [and...were killed](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [the Hittite](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Then their shooters shot at [your soldiers](#) from off the wall, and some of [the king’s servants were killed](#), and [your servant Uriah the Hittite](#) was killed, too.”

## 2 Samuel 11:25

### for the sword devours one as well as another

Here “the sword” refers to a person who kills someone with sword. Also, killing someone with a sword is spoken of as if the sword were “eating” the people. Alternate translation: “for one man can be killed by a sword the same as another man” or “for any man can die in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Make your battle even stronger

“Fight even stronger”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [let...displease you](#)
- [devours](#)
- [Make...even stronger](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then [David](#) said to the messenger, “Say this to [Joab](#), ‘Do not let this [displease you](#), for the sword [devours](#) one as well as another. [Make](#) your battle [even stronger](#) against the city, and overthrow it,’ and encourage him.”

## 2 Samuel 11:26

### she lamented deeply

Here the author speaks of her lamenting very much as if it were deep inside her. Alternate translation: “she lamented very much” or “she lamented greatly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Uriah](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [her husband](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> So when the wife of [Uriah](#) heard that [Uriah](#) her husband was dead, she lamented deeply for [her husband](#).

## 2 Samuel 11:27

### sorrow

a deep feeling of sadness caused by suffering, disappointment or misfortune

### David sent and took her home

Here the word “sent” means that he sent a messenger to get her and bring her to him. Alternate translation: “David sent a messenger to her to bring her home” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### displeased Yahweh

“saddened Yahweh” or “angered Yahweh”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [When...passed](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [his palace](#)
- [a son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

27 [When](#) her sorrow [passed](#), [David](#) sent and took her home to [his palace](#), and she became his wife and bore him [a son](#). But what [David](#) had done displeased [Yahweh](#).

## 2 Samuel 12

### 2 Samuel 12 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This is the final expansion of David's kingdom and records the end of the war with Ammon.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### David's punishment

God sent a prophet to confront David. He said that because David had Uriah killed, there would always be killing in his family and that the baby conceived with Bathsheba would die. David prayed that the baby be allowed to live, but the infant died. Bathsheba then had another son, who was named Solomon. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))



## 2 Samuel 12:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Nathan
- David

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh sent Nathan to David. He came to him and said, "There were once two men in a city. One man was rich and the other poor.

## 2 Samuel 12:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- flocks

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds,

## 2 Samuel 12:3

### ewe lamb

a female lamb

### was like a daughter to him

This refers to the closeness of this man and his little lamb. Alternate translation: "he loved it as much as if it were one of his daughters" (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he had bought](#)
- [and fed and raised](#)
- [his children](#)
- [The lamb...ate](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> but the poor man had nothing except one little ewe lamb, which [he had bought and fed and raised](#). It grew up together with him and with [his children](#). [The lamb](#) even [ate](#) with him and drank from his own cup, and it slept in his arms and was like a daughter to him.

## 2 Samuel 12:4

### ewe lamb

a young, female sheep

### for his visitor

It was for his visitor to eat. Alternate translation: "for his visitor to eat" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> One day a visitor came to the rich man, but the rich man was unwilling to take an animal from his own flocks and herds to provide food for the traveler. Instead he took the poor man's ewe lamb and cooked it for his visitor."

## 2 Samuel 12:5

### David was hot with anger against

Here the author describes how David was very angry as if his body were physically hot because of his anger. Alternate translation: "David became furious with" or "David became very angry with" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he raged to Nathan

This means that David spoke angrily to Nathan.

### As Yahweh lives

This expresses that David was swearing an oath or serious promise. Alternate translation: "I declare, as surely as Yahweh lives" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### to be put to death

This means to be killed. Also, that can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to be killed" or "to die" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [As...lives](#)
- [deserves to be put to death](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> [David](#) was hot with anger against the rich man, and he raged to [Nathan](#), "As [Yahweh lives](#), the man who has done this [deserves to be put to death](#)."

## 2 Samuel 12:6

### He must pay back the lamb four times over

The amount the rich man was required to pay back to the poor man was to be four times what the little lamb cost. "He must pay the poor man four times the price of the lamb" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

6 He must pay back the lamb four times over because he did such a thing, and because he had no pity."

### pity

to feel sadness and love for someone who is suffering or hurt or not loved

## 2 Samuel 12:7

### out of the hand of Saul

Here the word “hand” refers to control. Alternate translation: “out of Saul’s control” or “from Saul’s control” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Nathan
- David
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- Israel
- I
- king
- out of the hand of
- Saul

### ULT

7 Then [Nathan](#) said to [David](#), “You are that man! [Yahweh, the God of Israel](#), says, ‘I anointed you [king](#) over [Israel](#), and I rescued you [out of the hand of Saul](#).’”

## 2 Samuel 12:8

### your master's wives into your arms

Here Yahweh describes David having his master's wives as his own wives, by saying that they are "in his arms." Alternate translation: "your master's wives as your own" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I also gave you the house of Israel and Judah

Here Yahweh speaks of how he gave David his authority as king over Israel and Judah as if he gave him the houses of Israel and Judah as a gift. The phrase "the house of" means "the people of." Alternate translation: "I also gave you authority as king over the people of Israel and Judah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### if that had been too little

"if I had not given you enough"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your master](#)
- [your master](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [s house](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and Judah](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> I gave you [your master's house](#), and [your master's](#) wives into your arms. I also gave you [the house of Israel and Judah](#). But if that had been too little, I would have given you many other things in addition.



## 2 Samuel 12:9

### So why have you despised ... Yahweh, so as to do what is evil in his sight?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke David. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have despised ... Yahweh and should not have done what is evil in his sight!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### what is evil in his sight

Here "sight" refers to Yahweh's thoughts or opinion. Alternate translation: "what he considers to be evil" or "what is evil in Yahweh's judgement" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### You have struck down Uriah the Hittite with the sword

David did not kill Uriah himself, rather he arranged for him to be killed in battle. The phrase "with the sword" represents how Uriah died in battle. Alternate translation: "You have arranged for Uriah the Hittite to die in battle" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### You killed him with the sword of the army of Ammon

David did not kill Uriah himself, rather he arranged for him to be killed in battle when Israel was fighting against Ammon. The phrase "with the sword" refers to how he died in battle. Alternate translation: "You arranged for him to die in battle against the army of Ammon" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [what is evil](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [the Hittite](#)
- [with the sword](#)
- [with the sword of](#)
- [You killed](#)
- [the army of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So why have you despised the commands of [Yahweh](#), so as to do [what is evil](#) in his sight? You have struck down [Uriah the Hittite with the sword](#) and have taken his wife to be your own wife. [You killed him with the sword of the army of Ammon](#).

## 2 Samuel 12:10

### the sword will never leave your house

Here the word “sword” refers to people dying in war. Also, David’s “house” refers to his descendants. Alternate translation: “some of your descendants will always die in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the sword](#)
- [your house](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [the Hittite](#)

### ULT

**10** So now [the sword](#) will never leave [your house](#), because you have despised me and have taken the wife of [Uriah the Hittite](#) as your wife.'

## 2 Samuel 12:11

### out of your own house

Here David's "house" refers to his family. Alternate translation: "from among your own family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Before your own eyes

Here David is referred to by his eyes to emphasize what he would see. Alternate translation: "While you are watching" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### he will lie with your wives

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he will have sexual relations with your wives" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### in broad daylight

"in full daylight." The idea of doing something "openly" or in a way that people are fully aware of what is happening is often spoken about as being done in the "daylight." Alternate translation: "openly" or "and everyone will see what is happening" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [disaster](#)
- [out of your own house](#)

### ULT

**11** [Yahweh](#) says, 'Look, I will raise up [disaster](#) against you [out of your own house](#). Before your own eyes, I will take your wives and give them to your neighbor, and he will lie with your wives in broad daylight.'

## 2 Samuel 12:12

### committed your sin

“sinned”

### before all Israel

This phrase speaks of the people of Israel knowing about what has happened to his wives as if they all actually witnessed it happening. Alternate translation: “before all the people of Israel” or “and all the people of Israel will know about it” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For you committed your sin secretly, but I will do this thing before all [Israel](#), in the sunlight.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)

## 2 Samuel 12:13

### passed over

Yahweh has forgiven David of his sin. This is spoken of here as Yahweh passing over his sin as if it were something that he walked by and disregarded. Alternate translation: “forgiven” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### You will not be killed

This can be stated in active form. Sometimes men died because of their sins, but he will not die because of his sin with the woman. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “You will not die” or “you will not die because of this sin” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [I have sinned](#)
- [your sin](#)
- [against Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**13** Then [David](#) said to [Nathan](#), “[I have sinned against Yahweh.](#)” [Nathan](#) replied to [David](#), “[Yahweh](#) also has passed over [your sin](#). You will not be killed.

## 2 Samuel 12:14

### despised

to strongly dislike or hate someone or something

### the child who is born to you

The phrase “born to you” means that it is David’s baby. Alternate translation: “your child who will be born” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you have despised](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the child](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> However, because by this act [you have despised Yahweh, the child](#) who is born to you will surely die.”

## 2 Samuel 12:15

### Yahweh attacked the child that ... and he was very sick

Here the author speaks of Yahweh causing the baby to become sick as Yahweh attacking the child. Alternate translation: "Yahweh afflicted the child that ... and he was very sick" or "Yahweh caused the baby that ... to become very sick" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Then [Nathan](#) left and went [home](#).

[Yahweh](#) attacked [the child](#) that [Uriah's](#) wife bore to David, and he was very sick.

### the child that Uriah's wife bore to David

This means that she gave birth to a child and that David was his father. Alternate translation: "David's child, who Uriah's wife gave birth to" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Nathan](#)
- [home](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the child](#)
- [Uriah](#)

## 2 Samuel 12:16

### implored

to beg or pray with strong desire

### went inside

David went into his room when he was alone. Alternate translation: “went inside his room” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**16** David then implored God for the boy. David fasted and went inside and lay all night on the floor.

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- then implored
- God
- the boy
- fasted
- fasted
- on the floor



## 2 Samuel 12:17

### to raise him up from the floor

“and urged him to get up from the floor”

### Translation Words - ULT

- The elders of
- his house
- to raise him up
- the floor
- he would...eat

### ULT

**17** The elders of his house arose and stood beside him, to raise him up from the floor, but he would not get up, and he would not eat with them.

## 2 Samuel 12:18

### It came about

“It happened”

### he did not listen to our voice

The servants are referred to here by their voices to emphasize that they were speaking. Alternate translation: “he did not listen to us” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### the seventh day

“day 7.” This refers to the seventh day after the baby was born. Alternate translation: “the seventh day after he was born” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Look

This is used to get people’s attention. Alternate translation: “Listen”

### What might he do to himself if we tell him that the boy is dead?!

The servants ask this rhetorical question to express their fear. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “We are afraid that he may harm himself if we tell him that the boy is dead!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the child](#)
- [the child](#)
- [the child](#)
- [that the boy](#)
- [that...died](#)
- [David](#)
- [s servants](#)
- [were afraid](#)
- [alive](#)
- [to our voice](#)
- [What](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> It came about on the seventh day that [the child died](#). [David’s servants were afraid](#) to tell him that [the child](#) was dead, for they said, “Look, while [the child](#) was still [alive](#) we spoke to him, and he did not listen [to our voice](#). [What](#) might he do to himself if we tell him [that the boy](#) is dead?!”

## 2 Samuel 12:19

### were whispering together

“were speaking very quietly to each other”

### David perceived

“David understood”

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- He
- his servants
- his servants
- the child
- the child

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> But when David saw that his servants were whispering together, David perceived that the child was dead. He said to his servants, “Is the child dead?” They answered, “He is dead.”

## 2 Samuel 12:20

### David arose

“David got up”

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- and washed himself
- anointed himself
- the tabernacle of
- his own palace
- Yahweh
- and worshiped there
- they set
- food
- he ate

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then David arose from the floor and washed himself, anointed himself, and changed his clothes. He went to the tabernacle of Yahweh and worshiped there, and then he came back to his own palace. When he asked for it, they set food before him, and he ate.

## 2 Samuel 12:21

### General Information:

These verses contain rhetorical questions that emphasize that David realizes that Yahweh has allowed this to happen.

### Translation Words - ULT

- his servants
- You fasted
- the child
- the child
- while he was alive
- and ate
- and ate

### ULT

**21** Then his servants said to him, "Why have you done this? You fasted and wept for the child while he was alive, but when the child died, you got up and ate."

## 2 Samuel 12:22

### Who knows whether or not Yahweh will be gracious to me, that the child may live?

David asked this rhetorical question to empathize that no one knew if Yahweh would let the child live. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one knows whether or not Yahweh will be gracious to me so that the child may live." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the child
- the child
- was...alive
- I fasted
- knows
- Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> David answered, "While the child was still alive I fasted and wept. I said, 'Who knows whether or not Yahweh will be gracious to me, that the child may live?'

## 2 Samuel 12:23

### But now he is dead, so why should I fast?

David asks this rhetorical question to empathize that he no longer has a reason to fast. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Now that he is dead it would be of no use to fast any longer." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But now he is dead, so why should I fast? Can I [bring him back](#) again? I [will go](#) to him, but he will not [return](#) to me."

### Can I bring him back again?

David asks this rhetorical question to empathize that the boy cannot come back to life. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I cannot bring him back to life." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### I will go to him

David implies that he will go to where his child is when he dies. Alternate translation: "When I die I will go to where he is" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [should...fast](#)
- [bring him back](#)
- [will...return](#)
- [will go](#)

## 2 Samuel 12:24

### went in to her and lay with her

Both the phrase “went in to her” and the phrase “lay with her” refer to David having sexual relations with Bathsheba and emphasize what they did. Alternate translation: “had sexual relations with her” (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [a son](#)
- [and the child was named](#)
- [and the child was named](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [loved him](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> [David](#) comforted [Bathsheba](#) his wife, and went in to her and lay with her. Later she gave birth to [a son, and the child was named Solomon](#). [Yahweh](#) loved him



## 2 Samuel 12:25

### he sent word through Nathan the prophet

Here “word” refers to a message that Yahweh told Nathan to tell David. Alternate translation: “he sent Nathan to tell him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Jedidiah

This is another name for David’s son Solomon, which Yahweh chose for him. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [through](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [to name him](#)
- [to name him](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> and he sent word [through Nathan the prophet to name him](#) Jedidiah, because [Yahweh](#) loved him.

## 2 Samuel 12:26

### Joab fought ... he captured

Here the author says "Joab" but he is referring to Joab and his soldiers who fought with him. Alternate translation: "Joab and his soldiers fought ... they captured" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Rabbah

Fighting against this city literally means to fight against the people of Rabbah. Translate the name the same as you did in [2 Samuel 11:1](#). Alternate translation: "the people of Rabbah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [against Rabbah of](#)
- [the Ammonites](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Now [Joab](#) fought [against Rabbah of the Ammonites](#), and he captured the royal city.

## 2 Samuel 12:27

### So Joab sent messengers to David and said

“So Joab sent messengers to David to say to him”

### have taken the city’s water supply

“Taking” a place or landmark means to take control of it. Alternate translation: “have taken control of the city’s water supply” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I have fought ... I have taken

Here Joab speaks of himself when he is actually referring to himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: “My soldiers and I have fought ... my soldier and I have taken” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [messengers](#)
- [David](#)
- [against Rabbah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> So [Joab](#) sent [messengers](#) to [David](#) and said, “I have fought [against Rabbah](#), and I have taken the city’s water supply.”

## 2 Samuel 12:28

### if I take

Here Joab speaks of himself when he is actually referring to himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: “if my soldiers and I take” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### camp against

This means to surround and attack. Alternate translation: “besiege” or “surround” (See: [Idiom](#))

### take it ... take the city

“Taking” a place or landmark means to take control of it. Alternate translation: “take control of it ... take control of the city” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### it will be named

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people will name it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gather...together](#)
- [the army](#)
- [will be named after me](#)
- [will be named after me](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Now therefore [gather](#) the rest of [the army together](#) and camp against the city and take it, because if I take the city, it [will be named after me.](#)”

## 2 Samuel 12:29

### he fought

Here the author speaks of David when he is actually referring to David and his soldiers. Alternate translation: "David and his soldiers fought" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [the army](#)
- [to Rabbah](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> So [David](#) gathered all [the army](#) together and went [to Rabbah](#); he fought against the city and captured it.

## 2 Samuel 12:30

### a talent

This may be written in modern weights. Alternate translation: “about 33 kilograms” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### a precious stone

a rare gemstone such as a diamond, ruby, sapphire, emerald, or opal

### The crown was placed on David’s own head

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They placed the crown on David’s own head” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### he brought out

Here the author speaks of David when he is actually referring to David’s soldiers. Alternate translation: “they brought out” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### plunder

valuable things taken from a defeated enemy

### large quantities

“large amounts”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [their king](#)
- [s head](#)
- [s own head](#)
- [gold](#)
- [David](#)
- [he brought out](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> David took the crown from [their king’s head](#)—it weighed a talent of [gold](#), and there was a precious stone in it. The crown was placed on [David’s own head](#). Then [he brought out](#) the plunder of the city in large quantities.

## 2 Samuel 12:31

### He brought out the people

David did not bring out the people himself; he commanded his soldiers to bring them out. Alternate translation: "David commanded his soldiers to bring out the people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### saws, iron picks, and axes

These are tools to cut wood or break up the ground.

### brick kilns

ovens where bricks are dried and hardened

### all the cities of the people of Ammon

This refers to the people in the cities. Alternate translation: "all the people of the cities of Ammon" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- He brought out
- the people
- the army
- and forced them to work
- he also made...work
- the people of
- David
- Then...returned
- to Jerusalem

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> He brought out the people who were in the city and forced them to work with saws, iron picks, and axes; he also made them work at brick kilns. David required all the cities of the people of Ammon to do this labor. Then David and all the army returned to Jerusalem.

## 2 Samuel 13

### 2 Samuel 13 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story about the difficulties and killings in David's family. David's sin caused these problems in his family. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### **Amnon raped Absalom's sister**

Amnon raped Absalom's sister, who was his own half-sister. David did nothing to punish him and David's lack of action caused significant problems in his family and in Israel. This eventually caused Solomon to become king, even though he was not the oldest son.



## 2 Samuel 13:1

### It came about after this

“It happened after this.” This phrase is used to introduce a new event to the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### half-sister

Amnon and Tamar shared the same father but not the same mother.

### full sister

Absalom and Tamar shared the same father and mother.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Amnon
- s sons
- son of (2)
- David
- David
- that...was very attracted to
- Tamar
- who was a full sister of Absalom, another of

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> It came about after this that Amnon son of David was very attracted to his beautiful half-sister Tamar, who was a full sister of Absalom, another of David's sons.

## 2 Samuel 13:2

### Amnon was so frustrated that he became sick because of his sister Tamar

Amnon was frustrated because he desired to sleep with his sister Tamar. Alternate translation: "Amnon was so frustrated with desire for his sister Tamar that he felt sick" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Amnon
- Amnon
- was so frustrated
- Tamar
- a virgin

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Amnon was so frustrated that he became sick because of his sister Tamar. She was a virgin, and it seemed impossible to Amnon to do anything to her.

## 2 Samuel 13:3

### Jonadab son of Shimeah, David's brother

These are the names of men. Shimeah was David's brother. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### shrewd

crafty or deceptive

### Translation Words - ULT

- [But Amnon had](#)
- [son of](#)
- [David](#)
- [s brother](#)
- [shrewd](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> [But Amnon had](#) a friend whose name was Jonadab [son of Shimeah, David's brother](#). Jonadab was a very [shrewd](#) man.

## 2 Samuel 13:4

### depressed

in an emotional state of extreme unhappiness

### Will you not tell me?

It is understood that he is asking him about his depression, which can be stated clearly. Also, this rhetorical question is a request for

Jehonadab to tell him why he is depressed. It may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Will you not tell me why you are depressed?" or "Please, tell me why you are depressed." (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>4</sup>Jonadab said to Amnon, "Why, [son of the king](#), are you depressed every morning? Will you not tell me?" So [Amnon](#) answered him, "I [love Tamar](#), [my brother Absalom's](#) sister."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Amnon](#)
- [love](#)
- [Tamar](#)
- [my brother](#)
- [Absalom](#)

## 2 Samuel 13:5

### Jonadab

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 13:3](#).

### eat it from her hand

This is probably a request for her to serve food to him personally. He probably did not want her to put the food in his mouth. Alternate translation: "have her serve it to me herself" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your father](#)
- [Tamar](#)
- [something to eat](#)
- [and eat it](#)
- [from her hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then Jonadab said to him, "Lie down on your bed and pretend to be sick. When [your father](#) comes to see you, ask him, 'Would you please send my sister [Tamar](#) to give me [something to eat](#) and cook it before me, so that I may see it [and eat it from her hand](#)?'"

## 2 Samuel 13:6

### I may eat from her hand

This is probably a request for her to serve food to him personally. He probably did not expect her to put the food in his mouth. Alternate translation: “she may serve it to me to eat” (See: [Idiom](#))

### pretended to be sick

This means he gave a false appearance of being ill.

### for my sickness in front of me

The food is not for his sickness, but rather it is for him, because he is sick. The phrase “in front of me” is a request for Tamar to prepare the food in his presence. Alternate translation: “in front of me because I am sick” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Amnon](#)
- [Amnon](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Tamar](#)
- [from her hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So [Amnon](#) lay down and pretended to be sick. When [the king](#) came to see him, [Amnon](#) said to [the king](#), “Please send my sister [Tamar](#) to make some food for my sickness in front of me so that I may eat [from her hand](#).”

## 2 Samuel 13:7

### David sent word

This means that he sent a messenger to speak to Tamar. Alternate translation: "David sent a messenger" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Tamar
- at his palace
- s house
- Go...to
- your brother
- Amnon

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then David sent word to Tamar at his palace, saying, "Go now to your brother Amnon's house and prepare food for him."

## 2 Samuel 13:8

### dough

a thick mixture of flour and liquid used for baking

### kneaded

used her hands to mix the dough

### in his sight

This means that Tamar made the bread in front of him. Alternate translation: "in front of him" or "in his presence" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Tamar](#)
- [her brother](#)
- [Amnon](#)
- [s house](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So [Tamar](#) went to [her brother Amnon's house](#) where he was lying down. She took dough and kneaded it and formed bread in his sight, and then she baked it.



## 2 Samuel 13:9

### So everyone went out from him

To “go out from someone” means to leave them. Alternate translation: “So everyone left him” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Amnon](#)
- [Send...out](#)
- [So...went out](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> She took the pan and gave the bread to him, but he refused to eat. Then [Amnon](#) said to the others present, “[Send](#) everyone [out](#), away from me.” [So](#) everyone [went out](#) from him.

## 2 Samuel 13:10

### that I may eat from your hand

This is a request for Tamar to serve the food to him personally.  
Alternate translation: "and serve it to me" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Amnon](#)
- [Amnon](#)
- [Tamar](#)
- [Tamar \(2\)](#)
- [from your hand](#)
- [her brother](#)

### ULT

**10** So [Amnon](#) said to [Tamar](#), "Bring the food into my room that I may eat [from your hand](#)." So [Tamar](#) took the bread that she had made, and brought it into the room of [Amnon her brother](#).

## 2 Samuel 13:11

### lie with me

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "have sexual relations with me" (See: [Euphemism](#))

#### ULT

**11** When she had brought the food to him, he took hold of her and said to her, "Come, lie with me, my sister."

## 2 Samuel 13:12

### do not force me

She is referring to having sexual relations with him. Alternate translation: "do not force me to have sexual relations with you" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### appalling

very shameful

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my brother](#)
- [in Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> She answered him, "No, [my brother](#), do not force me, for nothing like this should be done [in Israel](#). Do not do this appalling thing!"

## 2 Samuel 13:13

### General Information:

Tamar continues to talk to Amnon.

### How could I be rid of my shame?

Tamar asks this rhetorical question to emphasize how much shame she would have if she slept with him. Tamar speaks of getting rid of her shame as if it were an enemy or a tormentor that she needed to escape from. Alternate translation: "If you do this, I would have to endure shame everywhere I go" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> How could I be rid of my shame?  
What about you? You would be like one of the fools in Israel! Now, please speak to the king, for he would not keep me from you."

### Translation Words - ULT

- could...be rid of
- my shame
- in Israel
- the king

## 2 Samuel 13:14

### he lay with her

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he had sexual relations with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to her](#)

### ULT

**14** However Amnon would not listen [to her](#), and he was stronger than she was, and he overpowered her, and he lay with her.

## 2 Samuel 13:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Amnon
- Amnon
- than he had desired her
- and go

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Then Amnon hated Tamar with extreme hatred. He hated her even more than he had desired her. Amnon said to her, "Get up and go."

## 2 Samuel 13:16

### Because this great evil of making me leave is even worse

The abstract noun “this great evil” can be expressed as a verb.  
Alternate translation: “It would be very evil to make me leave! It would be even worse” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evil](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> But she responded to him, “No! Because this great [evil](#) of making me leave is even worse than what you did to me!” But Amnon did not listen to her.



## 2 Samuel 13:17

### bolt the door after her

This means to lock the door so that she will not be able to come back in again. Alternate translation: “lock the door so that she cannot come back in” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Instead, he called](#)
- [his personal servant](#)
- [his personal servant](#)

### ULT

17 [Instead, he called his personal servant](#) and said, “Take this woman away from me, and bolt the door after her.”

## 2 Samuel 13:18

### bolted the door after her

This means to lock the door so that she will not be able to come back in again. Alternate translation: "locked the door so that she could not go back in" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- his servant
- Then...brought
- a...robe
- the king
- who were virgins
- dressed that way

### ULT

**18** Then his servant brought her out and bolted the door after her. Tamar was wearing a very decorated robe because the king's daughters who were virgins dressed that way.

## 2 Samuel 13:19

### put ashes on her head and tore her robe. She put her hands on her head

These are acts of mourning and grief in the Israelite culture.  
Alternate translation: "put ashes on her head and tore her robe to show that she was very sad. Then to show her grief, she put her hands on her head" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Tamar](#)
- [her head](#)
- [her head \(2\)](#)
- [robe](#)
- [She put](#)
- [her hands](#)
- [crying aloud](#)
- [as she went](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> [Tamar](#) put ashes on [her head](#) and tore her [robe](#). [She put her hands on her head](#) and walked away, [crying aloud as she went](#).

## 2 Samuel 13:20

### Has Amnon your brother been with you?

This is a polite way to ask if Amnon has had sexual relations with her. Alternate translation: "Has Amnon your brother slept with you?" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### keep quiet

This means to not tell anyone about something. Alternate translation: "do not tell anyone about this" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Do not take this thing to heart

The phrase "take something to heart" means "to worry about it." Alternate translation: "Do not worry about what has happened" (See: [Idiom](#))

### So Tamar remained alone

This means that she did not marry.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- Absalom
- her brother
- your brother
- your brother
- her brother
- in...s house
- Amnon
- keep quiet
- to heart
- Tamar

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Absalom her brother said to her, "Has Amnon your brother been with you? But now keep quiet, my sister. He is your brother. Do not take this thing to heart." So Tamar remained alone in her brother Absalom's house.

## 2 Samuel 13:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- But when King
- David

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But when King David heard of all these things, he was very angry.

## 2 Samuel 13:22

### said nothing

“did not speak”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- Absalom
- good
- Amnon
- him
- Tamar

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Absalom spoke neither evil nor good to Amnon, for Absalom hated him for what he had done to her and how he had disgraced his sister Tamar.

## 2 Samuel 13:23

### It came about after two full years

This explains that two whole years has passed and introduces the next event in the story line. The phrase “full years” means that they are complete years. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### shearers

These are people who cut the wool from sheep.

### Baal Hazor

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- Absalom
- Ephraim
- and...invited...to visit there
- the king
- s sons

### ULT

**23** It came about after two full years that Absalom had sheep shearers working at Baal Hazor, which is near Ephraim, and Absalom invited all the king's sons to visit there.

## 2 Samuel 13:24

### Look now

This is a phrase used to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### your servant

Absalom is calling himself "your servant" to show respect.

### has sheep shearers

It was customary for people in Israel to have a party after they had sheared their sheep.

### may the king

Although he is talking to his father the king, he calls him "the king" instead of "you" to show respect for him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- the king
- the king
- your servant has
- and his servants
- me, your servant
- may...go

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Absalom went to the king and said, "Look now, your servant has sheep shearers. Please, may the king and his servants go with me, your servant."



## 2 Samuel 13:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- The king
- Absalom
- my son
- should...go
- we would be a burden
- but he gave him his blessing

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> The king answered Absalom, “No, my son, all of us should not go because we would be a burden to you.” Absalom begged the king, but he would not go, but he gave him his blessing.

## 2 Samuel 13:26

### please let my brother Amnon go with us

The oldest son could often represent his father in Israelite culture. Amnon was David's oldest son.

### Why should Amnon go with you?

David knew that Amnon was not Absalom's friend.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- my brother
- Amnon
- let...go
- should Amnon go
- the king

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Then Absalom said, "If not, please let my brother Amnon go with us." So the king said to him, "Why should Amnon go with you?"

## 2 Samuel 13:27

### Absalom pressed David

Here the author speaks of Absalom urging David to let Amnon come as if he were putting physical pressure on him. Alternate translation: "Absalom begged David for Amnon to come" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### all the king's sons

This does not include Absalom and Amnon who is dead. It includes the rest of the sons that the king allowed to go to the celebration. Alternate translation: "the rest of the king's sons" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [Amnon](#)
- [the king](#)
- [s sons](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> [Absalom](#) pressed David, and so he let [Amnon](#) and all [the king's sons](#) go with him.

## 2 Samuel 13:28

### Do not be afraid

This implies that they do not need to be afraid of the consequences for killing Amnon. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Do not be afraid that you will be blamed for killing the king's son" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Have I not commanded you?

Absalom asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that he will be blamed for killing Amnon because he is commanding them. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have commanded you to do this." or "I will be the one guilty for killing him because I have commanded you to do this." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### not commanded you

What Absalom has commanded them to do may be stated in the question. Alternate translation: "not commanded you to kill him" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- commanded
- Have...commanded
- I
- Be courageous
- brave
- brave
- his servants
- When...begins to be affected by
- Amnon
- Amnon
- the wine
- then kill
- be afraid

### ULT

28 Absalom commanded his servants saying, "Pay attention. When Amnon begins to be affected by the wine, and when I say to you, 'Attack Amnon,' then kill him. Do not be afraid. Have I not commanded you? Be courageous and brave."

## 2 Samuel 13:29

### every man

This refers to the king's sons who left the celebration.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- he
- s servants
- to Amnon
- had commanded them
- the king
- s sons
- and...mounted

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> So Absalom's servants did to Amnon as he had commanded them. Then all the king's sons arose, and every man mounted his mule and fled.

## 2 Samuel 13:30

### So it came about

“It happened that.” This phrase is used here to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### on the road

“travelling along the road”

### that the news came to David saying

Here it says that the news came, when really someone came and told David the news. Alternate translation: “that someone came and reported the news to David saying” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [the king](#)
- [s sons](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> So it came about, while they were on the road, that the news came to [David](#) saying, “[Absalom](#) has killed all [the king’s sons](#), and there is not one of them left.”

## 2 Samuel 13:31

### Then the king arose

“Then the king stood up”

### tore his clothes, and lay on the floor

He did these things to show that he was extremely sad. Alternate translation: “tore his clothes, and threw himself on the floor grieving” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### with their clothes torn

They did this to show their sadness and to mourn with their king. Alternate translation: “and tore their clothes, mourning with the king” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [on the floor](#)
- [his servants](#)

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Then [the king](#) arose and tore his clothes, and lay [on the floor](#); all [his servants](#) stood by with their clothes torn.

## 2 Samuel 13:32

### Jonadab ... Shimeah

See how you translated these men's names in [2 Samuel 13:3](#).

### Let not my master believe

"My master, do not believe"

### my master

Jonadab calls David "my master" to show respect.

### Amnon violated his sister

This is a polite way of saying that Amnon raped his sister. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)
- [who are...s sons](#)
- [David](#)
- [Tamar](#)
- [s brother](#)
- [my master](#)
- [the young men](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Amnon](#)
- [Absalom](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Jonadab [son of Shimeah, David's brother](#), answered and said, "Let not [my master](#) believe that they have killed all [the young men who are the king's sons](#), for [Amnon](#) only is dead. [Absalom](#) has planned this from the day that Amnon violated his sister [Tamar](#)."



## 2 Samuel 13:33

### let not my master the king

“my master the king, do not”

### take this report to heart

The phrase “take something to heart” means “to worry about it.”  
Alternate translation: “worry about this report” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [heart](#)
- [s sons](#)
- [Amnon](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> So therefore let not [my master the king](#) take this report to [heart](#), so as to believe that all [the king's sons](#) are dead, for [Amnon](#) only is dead.”

## 2 Samuel 13:34

### keeping watch

This means that the servant was watching for enemies while guarding at the city wall. Alternate translation: “who was guarding” or “who was guarding at the city wall” (See: [Idiom](#))

### raised his eyes

Here the servant looking up at something is spoken of as if he lifted up his eyes. Alternate translation: “looked up” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [A servant](#)
- [people](#)
- [coming](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> [Absalom](#) fled away. [A servant](#) keeping watch raised his eyes and saw many [people coming](#) on the road on the hillside west of him.

## 2 Samuel 13:35

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- s sons
- your servant

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Then Jonadab said to the king, "Look, the king's sons are coming. It is just as your servant said."

## 2 Samuel 13:36

### So it came about

This phrase is used to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### raised their voices

Here the sons crying out is spoken of as if their voices were something they lifted into the sky. Alternate translation: "cried out" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> So it came about when he finished speaking, [the king's sons](#) arrived and raised their voices and wept. [The king](#) and all [his servants](#) also wept bitterly.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [The king](#) (2)
- [s sons](#)
- [his servants](#)

## 2 Samuel 13:37

### Talmai ... Ammihud

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### for his son

“for his son Amnon”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [But Absalom](#)
- [son of](#)
- [his son](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Geshur](#)
- [David mourned](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> [But Absalom](#) fled and went to Talmai [son of Ammihud, the king of Geshur](#). [David mourned](#) for [his son](#) every day.

## 2 Samuel 13:38

### where he was for three years

“where he stayed for three years”

### Translation Words - ULT

- So Absalom
- Geshur

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> So Absalom fled and went to Geshur, where he was for three years.

## 2 Samuel 13:39

### The mind of King David longed

Here David is referred to by his mind to emphasize his thoughts.  
Alternate translation: "King David longed" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### for he was comforted concerning Amnon and his death

"because he was no longer grieving about Amnon being dead." This refers to three years after Absalom fled to Geshur.

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> The mind of [King David](#) longed to go out to see [Absalom](#), for he was [comforted](#) concerning [Amnon](#) and his death.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [King](#)
- [David](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [he was comforted](#)
- [Amnon](#)

## 2 Samuel 14

### 2 Samuel 14 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Reconciliation

David missed his son, Absalom, who was in exile. Joab summons a wise woman to reconcile David and Absalom. (See: [reconcile](#), [reconciled](#), [reconciliation](#))

### Important figures of speech used in this chapter

#### Parable

The wise woman uses a type of parable to convince David that his actions were wrong. He treated a stranger worse than he treated his own son. This hypothetical situation was intended to convict David of his sin. She uses David's own words against him. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))



## 2 Samuel 14:1

### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells about a new person in the story.

### Zeruiah

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 2:13](#).

### perceived

This means Joab discerned or understood what David was thinking.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Now...perceived](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [son of](#)
- [the king](#)
- [s heart](#)
- [Absalom](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> [Now Joab son of Zeruiah](#) [perceived](#) that [the king's heart](#) desired to see [Absalom](#).

## 2 Samuel 14:2

### sent word to Tekoa and had a wise woman brought

This means that Joab sent someone with a message to Tekoa and had him bring back a woman to him. This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: “sent someone with a message to Tokoa and had him bring a wise woman back” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Tekoa

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the dead

This refers to someone who has died, not dead people in general. Alternate translation: “someone who has died” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [wise](#)
- [pretend you are a mourner](#)
- [who has mourned](#)
- [with oil](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So [Joab](#) sent word to Tekoa and had from there a [wise](#) woman brought to him. He said to her, “Please [pretend you are a mourner](#) and put on mourning clothes. Please do not anoint yourself [with oil](#), but be like a woman [who has mourned](#) a long time for the dead.

## 2 Samuel 14:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- So...told her
- Joab

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then go to [the king](#) and speak to him about what I will describe." [So Joab told her](#) the words she was to say.

## 2 Samuel 14:4

### she lay facedown on the ground

She did this to show her respect and submission to the king.  
Alternate translation: "she showed her respect to the king by laying facedown on the ground" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- king
- she lay
- she lay
- on the ground
- Help me

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> When the woman from Tekoa spoke to the king, she lay facedown on the ground and said, "Help me, king."

## 2 Samuel 14:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- The king
- and...is dead

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> The king said to her, "What is wrong?"  
She answered, "The truth is that I am a widow, and my husband is dead."

## 2 Samuel 14:6

### One struck the other

“One of my sons hit the other son with something”

### Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- and killed

### ULT

<sup>6</sup>I, your servant, had two sons, and they fought together in the field, and there was no one to separate them. One struck the other and killed him.

## 2 Samuel 14:7

### the whole clan

“my entire family”

### your servant

To show respect for the king the woman refers to herself as “your servant.”

### put him to death

This is an idiom which means to kill. Alternate translation: “kill him” (See: [Idiom](#))

### they would also destroy the heir

If they put the guilty brother to death there would not be a son left to inherit the family’s possessions. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “if they did this, they would be destroying our family’s heir” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Thus they will put out the burning coal that I have left

Here the woman refers to her only living son as if he were a burning piece of coal. She speaks of the men killing her son as stopping the coal’s burning. Alternate translation: “In this way they will kill the only child I have left” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### they will leave for my husband neither name nor descendant

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “they will not leave for my husband name or descendant” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### neither name nor descendant

This refers to a son to carry on the family’s name into the next generation. Alternate translation: “no son to preserve our family’s name” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### on the surface of the earth

“on the earth.” This descriptive phrase emphasizes that the family line would not continue on earth after the husband died. “The surface of the earth” refers to the ground on which people walk.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your servant](#)
- [his brother](#)
- [his brother](#)
- [so that we may put him to death](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Now the whole clan has risen against [your servant](#), and they say, ‘Give into our hand the man who struck [his brother](#), so that we may put him to death, to pay for the life of his brother whom [he killed](#).’ So they would also destroy the heir. Thus they will put out the burning coal that I have left, and they will leave for my husband [neither name](#) nor descendant on [the surface of the earth](#).”

- he killed
- to pay for the life of
- neither name
- the surface of



## 2 Samuel 14:8

### I will command something to be done for you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will take care of this matter for you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Go to
- your house
- will command something to be done

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So the king said to the woman, "Go to your house, and I will command something to be done for you."

## 2 Samuel 14:9

### Tekoa

Translate the name of this place the same as you did in [2 Samuel 14:2](#).

### may the guilt be on me and on my father's family

This means that if people say that the king was wrong for helping the woman's family that the king should not be guilty. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "if anyone blames you for helping our family, may my family be considered guilty instead" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### The king and his throne

Here the word "throne" refers to anyone who later becomes king in David's place. Alternate translation: "The king and his descendants" or "The king and his family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### are guiltless

"are innocent." This implies that in the future if anyone accuses the king of wrongdoing, he will be innocent in the matter. Alternate translation: "will be innocent regarding the matter" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- king
- The king
- My master
- my father
- s family
- guiltless

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> The woman of Tekoa replied to the king, "My master, king, may the guilt be on me and on my father's family. The king and his throne are guiltless."

## 2 Samuel 14:10

### says anything to you

Here speaking threats is spoken of as speaking in general. Alternate translation: “threatens you” or “speaks threats to you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### he will not touch you anymore

Here David speaks of a person not threatening or hurting her, by saying that the person would not touch her. It is implied that David will not allow the person threatening her to bother her again. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “I will make sure he does not threaten you again” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)

#### ULT

**10** [The king](#) replied, “Whoever says anything to you, bring him to me, and he will not touch you anymore.”

## 2 Samuel 14:11

### Please, may the king call to mind Yahweh your God

This could mean: (1) The phrase “call to mind” is an idiom meaning to pray. Alternate translation: “Please, pray to Yahweh your God” or (2) Here “call to mind” means to remember and it is implied that after he remembers Yahweh he will promise in his name. Alternate translation: “Please promise in the name of Yahweh your God” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Then she said, “Please, may [the king](#) remember [Yahweh your God](#), so that [the avenger of blood](#) will not destroy anyone further, so that they will not destroy [my son](#).” The king replied, “As [Yahweh lives](#), not one hair of [your son](#) will fall [to the ground](#).”

### the avenger of blood

This refers to the man who wants to avenge the death of the dead brother. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “the man who wants to avenge my son’s brother’s death” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### destroy anyone further

“cause anyone else to die.” This is in addition to the brother who already died.

### that they will not destroy my son

“that they will not kill my son” or “that they will not execute my son”

### As Yahweh lives

Often people would make promises and compare how surely they would fulfil their promise to how surely Yahweh is alive. Alternate translation: “I promise you, as surely as Yahweh lives” or “In Yahweh’s name I promise” (See: [Simile](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### not one hair of your son will fall to the ground

The means that her son will not be harmed, which is exaggerated by saying that he will not lose even a single hair. Alternate translation: “your son will be completely safe” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [your God](#)
- [the avenger of](#)
- [my son](#)
- [your son](#)
- [lives](#)
- [to the ground](#)

## 2 Samuel 14:12

### your servant

To show respect for the king the woman refers to herself as “your servant.”

### speak a further word to

“talk about something else to.” The woman is requesting to speak to the king about another topic.

### Speak on

This is an idiom. The king was giving her permission to continue speaking. Alternate translation: “You may speak to me” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your servant](#)
- [my master](#)
- [the king](#)

### ULT

**12** Then the woman said, “Please let [your servant](#) speak a further word to [my master the king.](#)” He said, “Speak on.”

## 2 Samuel 14:13

### Why then have you devised such a thing against the people of God?

The woman asks this rhetorical question to rebuke David for how he has treated Absalom. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "What you have just said proved that you did wrong." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the king is like someone who is guilty

The woman compares the king to someone who is guilty to suggest that he is guilty without saying it directly. Alternate translation: "the king has declared himself guilty"

### his banished son

"his son whom he banished"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the people of](#)
- [God](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [has...brought back home again](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> So the woman said, "Why then have you devised such a thing against [the people of God](#)? For in saying this thing, [the king](#) is like someone who is guilty, because [the king](#) has not [brought back home again](#) his banished son.

## 2 Samuel 14:14

### For we all must die, and we are like water spilled on the ground ... up again

Here the woman speaks of a person dying as if they were water being spilled on the ground. Alternate translation: "We all must die, and after we die we cannot be brought back to life again" (See: [Simile](#))

### God ... finds a way for those who were driven away to be restored

The woman is implying that David should bring his son back to himself. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "God brings back someone whom he has driven away and you should do the same for your son" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [on the ground](#)
- [cannot be gathered up again](#)
- [God](#)
- [life](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For we all must die, and we are like water spilled [on the ground](#), which [cannot be gathered up again](#). But [God](#) will not take away [life](#); instead, he finds a way for those who were driven away to be restored.

## 2 Samuel 14:15

### because the people have made me afraid

The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: “because the people have made me afraid that I have come” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### your servant

To show respect for the king the woman refers to herself as “your servant”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the people](#)
- [have made me afraid](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [his servant](#)

### ULT

**15** Now then, seeing that I have come to speak this thing to [my master the king](#), it is because [the people have made me afraid](#). So [your servant](#) said to herself, ‘I will now speak to [the king](#). It may be that [the king](#) will perform the request of [his servant](#).’



## 2 Samuel 14:16

### from the hand of the man

This phrase is an idiom. Also, “the hand” is a metonym referring to the man’s control. Alternate translation: “out of the control of the man” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [his servant](#)
- [from the hand of](#)
- [who would destroy](#)
- [my son](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

**16** Perhaps [the king](#) will listen to me and deliver [his servant from the hand of the man who would destroy](#) me and [my son](#) together, out of the inheritance [God](#) gave us.’

## 2 Samuel 14:17

### the word of my master the king

“the message of my master the king”

### for as an angel of God, so is my master ... from evil

Here David, the king, is compared to an “angel of God.” Alternate translation: “for the king is like an angel of God because they both know how to tell good from evil” (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your servant](#)
- [my master](#)
- [my master](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**17** Then [your servant](#) prayed, ‘Please, may the word of [my master the king](#) give me relief, for as an angel of [God](#), so is [my master the king](#) in telling good from evil.’ May [Yahweh](#) your [God](#) be with you.”

## 2 Samuel 14:18

### Please do not hide from me anything that I will ask you

The negative form here is used for emphasis and can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "Please tell me the truth about everything I ask you" (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- I
- my master

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Then the king answered and said to the woman, "Please do not hide from me anything that I will ask you." The woman replied, "Let my master the king now speak."

## 2 Samuel 14:19

### Is not the hand of Joab with you in all this

Here the word “hand” refers to Joab’s influence. Alternate translation: “Has not Joab influenced you in all this” or “Did Joab send you here to speak these things” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### As you live

“As surely as you are alive.” Here the woman compares the certainty of what David has said to the certainty that he is alive, to emphasize how true his statement is. (See: [Idiom](#))

### no one can escape to the right hand ... the king has spoken

Here the woman describes the difficulty of speaking to the king and keeping him from finding out the truth by comparing it to a person not being about to escape in any direction. Alternate translation: “no one can keep you from knowing the truth” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to the right hand or to the left

The expression gives two extremes and means “anywhere.” Alternate translation: “anywhere at all” or “anywhere” (See: [Merism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king \(2\)](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [who commanded me](#)
- [As you live](#)
- [As you live](#)
- [my master](#)
- [my master](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [your servant](#)

### ULT

**19** [The king](#) said, “Is not the hand of [Joab](#) with you in all this?” The woman answered and said, “[As you live, my master the king](#), no one can escape to the right hand or to the left from anything that [my master the king](#) has spoken. It was [your servant Joab who commanded me](#) and told me to say these things that [your servant](#) has spoken.”

## 2 Samuel 14:20

### My master is wise

“My master the king is wise”

### is wise, like the wisdom of an angel of God

The woman compares David’s wisdom to the wisdom of an angel to emphasize how very wise he is. Alternate translation: “you are very wise, like an angel of God” (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Your servant
- Joab
- the course of
- wise
- an angel of
- God

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Your servant Joab has done this to change the course of what is happening. My master is wise, like the wisdom of an angel of God, and he knows everything that is happening in the land.”

## 2 Samuel 14:21

### So the king said to Joab

It is implied that the king had Joab brought before him so that he could speak to him. The full meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Then the king summoned Joab and said to him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> So [the king](#) said to [Joab](#), "Look now, I will do this thing. Go then, [and bring the young man Absalom back](#)."

### Look now

This phrase is used to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### this thing

This refers to what Joab wants the king to do. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "what you want me to do" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [and bring...back](#)
- [the young man](#)
- [Absalom](#)

## 2 Samuel 14:22

### Joab lay facedown on the ground

Joab did this to honor the king and show his gratitude. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### your servant

To show respect for the king Joab refers to himself as “your servant.”

### I have found favor in your eyes

The phrase “found favor” is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Also, “eyes” is a metonym for sight, and sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “you are pleased with me” or “you have approved of me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### in that the king

“because the king”

### the king has performed the request of his servant

“you have done what I asked you to do”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So...lay](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [knows](#)
- [favor](#)
- [my master](#)
- [facedown](#)
- [on the ground](#)
- [in honor](#)
- [and gratitude](#)
- [to the king](#)
- [king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [his servant](#)

### ULT

**22** So Joab lay facedown on the ground in honor and gratitude to the king. Joab said, “Today your servant knows that I have found favor in your eyes, my master, king, in that the king has performed the request of his servant.”

## 2 Samuel 14:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- to Geshur
- Absalom
- to Jerusalem

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> So Joab arose, went to Geshur, and brought Absalom back to Jerusalem.



## 2 Samuel 14:24

### but he may not see my face ... the king's face

Here the word "face" refers to the king himself. Alternate translation: "but he may not see me ... the king" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- The king
- the king
- his own house
- his own house (2)
- but...my face
- but...s face
- Absalom

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> The king said, "He may return to his own house, but he may not see my face." So Absalom returned to his own house, but did not see the king's face.

## 2 Samuel 14:25

### Now

This word marks a break in the main story line. This new section gives background information for the part of the story that follows. (See: [Background Information](#))

### there was no one praised for his handsomeness more than Absalom

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people praised Absalom for his handsomeness more than they praised anyone else” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### handsomeness

good and pleasing appearance, especially of the face

### From the sole of his foot to the top of his head there was no blemish in him

This means the whole person was without blemish. Alternate translation: “There were no blemishes on any part of his body” (See: [Merism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Now...Absalom](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [praised](#)
- [From the sole of](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> [Now](#) in all [Israel](#) there was no one [praised](#) for his handsomeness more than [Absalom](#). [From the sole of](#) his foot to the top of his head there was no blemish in him.

## 2 Samuel 14:26

### two hundred shekels

This can be written in modern units. Alternate translation: “two and a half kilograms” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### the weight of the king’s standard

The king had weights that determined the standard weight of the shekel and other weights and measurements.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [his head](#)
- [about](#)
- [it was heavy](#)
- [the king](#)

### ULT

**26** When he cut the hair of [his head](#) at the end of every year, because [it was heavy](#) on him, he weighed his hair; it would weigh [about](#) 200 shekels, which is measured by the weight of [the king’s](#) standard.

## 2 Samuel 14:27

### To Absalom were born three sons and one daughter

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Absalom had three sons and one daughter"

### Translation Words - ULT

- To Absalom
- sons
- Tamar

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> To Absalom were born three sons and one daughter, whose name was Tamar. She was a beautiful woman.

## 2 Samuel 14:28

### the king's face

Here "the king's face" refers to the king himself. Alternate translation: "the king" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [the king](#)
- [s face](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> [Absalom](#) lived two full years [in Jerusalem](#), without seeing [the king's face](#).

## 2 Samuel 14:29

### Absalom sent word for Joab

Here “word” is a metonym for “a message.” This means that he sent a messenger to Joab with a request. Alternate translation: “Absalom sent a messenger to Joab asking him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### to send him to the king

It is implied that Absalom wanted Joab to come to him to see him and to intercede for him so that he would be allowed to see the king. The full meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “to come to him and to intercede for him so that he could see the king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### So Absalom sent word a second time

Here “word” is a metonym for “a message.” This means that he sent a messenger to Joab again with the same request. The full meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “So Absalom sent a messenger to Joab again with the same request” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [the king](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Then [Absalom](#) sent word for [Joab](#) to send him to [the king](#), but Joab would not come to him. So Absalom sent word a second time, but Joab still did not come.

## 2 Samuel 14:30

### See

Here this word is used to remind people of something. Alternate translation: "As you know"

### Translation Words - ULT

- his servants
- s servants
- Joab
- is near mine
- barley
- Go
- on fire
- on fire
- Absalom

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> So Absalom said to his servants, "See, Joab's field is near mine, and he has barley there. Go and set it on fire." So Absalom's servants set the field on fire.

## 2 Samuel 14:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- Absalom
- at his house
- your servants
- on fire

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Then Joab arose and came to Absalom at his house, and said to him, "Why have your servants set my field on fire?"



## 2 Samuel 14:32

### Look

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important”

### I sent word

Here “word” is a metonym for “a message.” This means that he sent a messenger. Alternate translation: “I sent a messenger” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### to the king to say

The message here for the king is written as if Absalom were the speaker. Absalom was asking Joab to speak the message on his behalf. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “to say to the king on my behalf” or “to ask the king for me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the king’s face

Here “king’s face” refers to the king himself. Alternate translation: “the king” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [from Geshur](#)
- [It would be better](#)
- [s face](#)
- [guilty](#)
- [let him kill me](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> [Absalom](#) answered [Joab](#), “Look, I sent word to you saying, ‘Come here so I may send you to [the king](#) to say, “Why did I come [from Geshur](#)? [It would be better](#) for me to still be there. Now therefore let me see [the king’s face](#), and if I am [guilty](#), [let him kill me.](#)””

## 2 Samuel 14:33

### bowed low to the ground before the king

Absalom is showing respect to the king. Alternate translation: "bowed low to the ground to honor the king" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### the king kissed Absalom

This implies that the king forgave and restored Absalom. The full meaning of this can be made clear. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Symbolic Action](#))

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> So Joab went to the king and told him. When the king called for Absalom, he came to the king and bowed low to the ground before the king, and the king kissed Absalom.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- the king
- the king
- the king
- the king
- When the king called
- Absalom
- Absalom
- and bowed low
- to the ground

## 2 Samuel 15

### 2 Samuel 15 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story of Absalom's attempted revolt.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Absalom's conspiracy

For four years, Absalom made many allies in an attempt to make himself king. This is why he acted as a judge for the people. Since this was all done in secret, it is called a "conspiracy." David found out and fled with those in the army who were loyal to him.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

The author used the metaphor of a thief to describe how Absalom was able to win people's loyalty: "So Absalom stole the hearts of the men of Israel." (See: [Metaphor](#))

## 2 Samuel 15:1

### It came about

This phrase is used to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### with fifty men to run before him

These men would run in front of the chariot to honor Absalom. Alternate translation: “with fifty men to run before him to honor him” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [a chariot](#)
- [and horses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> It came about after this that [Absalom](#) prepared [a chariot and horses](#) for himself, with 50 men to run before him.

## 2 Samuel 15:2

### Your servant

When a man would respond to Absalom's question he would refer to himself as "your servant" to honor Absalom.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- Absalom
- beside
- the city gate
- the king
- called
- Your servant is
- the tribes of
- Israel

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Absalom would get up early and stand beside the road leading to the city gate. When any man had a dispute to come to the king for judgment, Absalom called to him and said, "From what city have you come?" Then the man would answer, "Your servant is from one of the tribes of Israel."

## 2 Samuel 15:3

### So Absalom would say to him

It is implied that the person told his case to Absalom. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Absalom would ask him what his problem was, and the man would then explain to Absalom why he sought justice. Absalom would then say to him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> So [Absalom](#) would say to him, "Look, your case is [good](#) and right, but there is no one empowered by [the king](#) to hear your case."

### good and right

These words have basically the same meaning and are used together to emphasize that his case is good. (See: [Doublet](#))

### to hear your case

"Hearing" a case means to listen to it and to make a judgement decision over it. Alternate translation: "to judge your case" or "to oversee your case" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [good](#)
- [the king](#)

## 2 Samuel 15:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- or cause

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Absalom added, "I wish that I were made judge in the land, so that every man who had any dispute or cause might come to me, and I would bring him justice!"

## 2 Samuel 15:5

### put out his hand and take hold of him and kiss him

This action is a friendly greeting. Alternate translation: "greet him as a friend by embracing him and kissing him" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [his hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So it came about that when any man came to Absalom to honor him, Absalom would put out [his hand](#) and take hold of him and kiss him.



## 2 Samuel 15:6

### for judgment

This means that they can for the king to decide their disputes.  
Alternate translation: "to judge over their disputes" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### So Absalom stole the hearts of the men of Israel

This sentence means Absalom convinced the men to be loyal to him rather than to David. Here the author speaks of how the people became loyal to Absalom by saying that he stole their hearts. Alternate translation: "In this way, Absalom convinced the men of Israel to be loyal to him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> [Absalom](#) acted in this way to all [Israel](#) who came to [the king](#) for judgment. So [Absalom](#) stole [the hearts of](#) the men of [Israel](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the hearts of](#)

## 2 Samuel 15:7

### It came about

This phrase is used to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### at the end of four years that Absalom

This refers to four years after he returned to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “fours years after Absalom had returned to Jerusalem, he” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### and pay a vow that I have made to Yahweh in Hebron

“to Hebron and there fulfill a vow that I have made to Yahweh”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [the king](#)
- [let me go](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> It came about at the end of four years that [Absalom](#) said to [the king](#), “Please [let me go](#) and pay a vow that I have made [to Yahweh](#) in Hebron.”

## 2 Samuel 15:8

### For your servant

Here Absalom refers to himself this way to honor the king.

### Translation Words - ULT

- your servant
- at Geshur
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- will...bring me again
- indeed
- to Jerusalem

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For *your servant* made a vow while I was living *at Geshur* in Aram, saying, ' If *Yahweh* will *indeed bring me again to Jerusalem*, then I will worship *Yahweh*.' "

## 2 Samuel 15:9

### So Absalom arose

“So Absalom left”

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Go

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So [the king](#) said to him, “[Go](#) in peace.”  
So Absalom arose and went to Hebron.

## 2 Samuel 15:10

### throughout all the tribes of Israel

Here the places where the tribes of Israel lived are referred to as the tribes themselves. Alternate translation: "throughout the land of the tribes of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the sound of the trumpet

"a trumpet being blown"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [Absalom is](#)
- [the tribes of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the trumpet](#)

### ULT

**10** But then [Absalom](#) sent spies throughout all [the tribes of Israel](#), saying, "As soon as you hear the sound of [the trumpet](#), then you must say, '[Absalom is king in Hebron.](#)'"

## 2 Samuel 15:11

### who were invited

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “who he had invited” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### went in their innocence

“went innocently”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- went
- from Jerusalem
- who were invited
- knowing

### ULT

11 With Absalom went 200 men from Jerusalem, who were invited. They went in their innocence, not knowing anything that Absalom had planned.

## 2 Samuel 15:12

### he sent for Ahithophel

This means that he sent a messenger to go get Ahithophel and bring him back to him. Alternate translation: “he sent a messenger to go get Ahithophel who was” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Ahithophel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Giloh

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [He was...s counselor](#)
- [David](#)
- [for the people](#)
- [following](#)

### ULT

**12** While [Absalom](#) offered sacrifices, he sent for Ahithophel the Gilohite from his hometown of Giloh. [He was David's counselor](#). Absalom's conspiracy was strong, [for the people following Absalom](#) were constantly increasing.

## 2 Samuel 15:13

### The hearts of the men of Israel are following after

Here the men are referred to by their “hearts” to emphasize their loyalty to Absalom. Alternate translation: “The men of Israel are loyal to” or “The men of Israel are following after” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> A messenger came to [David](#) saying, “[The hearts of the men of Israel](#) are following after [Absalom](#).”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [The hearts of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Absalom](#)



## 2 Samuel 15:14

### escape from Absalom ... he will quickly ... and he will bring

Here David speaks of Absalom and the men with him as “Absalom” himself because the men are following Absalom’s authority. Alternate translation: “escape from Absalom and his men ... he and his men will quickly ... and they will bring” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### attack the city with the edge of the sword

The “city” is a metonym referring to the people in the city. The “edge of the sword” is a synecdoche referring to the Israelites’ swords and emphasize that they killed the people in battle. Alternate translation: “will attack the people of our city and kill them with their swords” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### bring down disaster

This means to cause disaster to happen. (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [his servants](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [escape](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [disaster](#)
- [the sword](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> So [David](#) said to all [his servants](#) who were with him [in Jerusalem](#), “Arise and let us flee, or none of us will [escape](#) from [Absalom](#). Prepare to leave immediately, or he will quickly overtake us, and he will bring down [disaster](#) on us and attack the city with the edge of [the sword](#).”

## 2 Samuel 15:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- The king
- the king
- the king (2)
- s servants
- your servants
- our master

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> The king's servants said to the king,  
"Look, your servants are ready to do  
whatever our master the king decides."

## 2 Samuel 15:16

### to keep the palace

Here the word “keep” means to care for. Alternate translation: “to care for the palace” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- The king
- the king
- left
- his family
- the palace

### ULT

**16** The king left and all his family after him, but the king left ten women, who were his slave wives, to keep the palace.

## 2 Samuel 15:17

### at the last house

This refers to the last house they would come to when leaving the city. Alternate translation: "at the last house as they were leaving the city" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [After...went out](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the people](#)

### ULT

**17** [After the king went out](#) and all [the people](#) after him, they stopped at the last house.

## 2 Samuel 15:18

### Kerethites ... Pelethites

Translate the names of these people groups the same as you did in [2 Samuel 8:18](#).

### Gittites

Translate the name of this people group the same as you did in [2 Samuel 6:10](#).

### six hundred men

“600 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [his army](#)
- [him](#)
- [before](#)
- [him](#)
- [the Kerethites](#)

### ULT

**18** All [his army](#) marched with [him](#), and [before him](#) went all [the Kerethites](#), and all the Pelethites, and all the Gittites—600 men who had followed him from Gath.

## 2 Samuel 15:19

### Ittai

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Gittite

Translate the name of this people group the same as you did in [2 Samuel 6:10](#).

### ULT

**19** Then [the king](#) said to Ittai the Gittite, "Why [will you come](#) with us? [Return](#) and stay with [the king](#), for you are [a foreigner](#) and [an exile](#). Return to your own place.

### Why will you come with us?

This rhetorical question indicates that the king does not think they should go along with him. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You do not need to go with us." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the king](#) (2)
- [will you come](#)
- [Return](#)
- [a foreigner](#)
- [an exile](#)

## 2 Samuel 15:20

### why should I make you wander all over with us?

This rhetorical question emphasizes David did not want Ittai to come. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I do not want to cause you to wander around with us." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Since you just left yesterday

Here "yesterday" is an exaggeration that emphasizes a short amount of time. Ittai the Gittite had lived there for several years. Alternate translation: "Since you have lived here only a short time" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### May loyalty and faithfulness go with you

This is a blessing that David is giving to him. Alternate translation: "May Yahweh be faithful and loyal to you always" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- do not...know
- am going
- So return
- and take...back
- your fellow countrymen
- May loyalty...go
- and faithfulness

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Since you just left yesterday, why should I make you wander all over with us? I do not even know where I am going. So return and take your fellow countrymen back. May loyalty and faithfulness go with you."

## 2 Samuel 15:21

### As Yahweh lives, and as my master the king lives

Here the speaker is making a solemn promise. He compare the certainty the he will fulfill his promise to the certainty that Yahweh and the king are alive. Alternate translation: "I solemnly promise that as surely as Yahweh and the king live" (See: [Simile](#))

### your servant

Ittai refers to himself this way to honor the king.

### whether that means living or dying

"even if I get killed supporting you"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [As...lives](#)
- [my master](#)
- [my master \(2\)](#)
- [your servant](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But Ittai answered [the king](#) and said, "As [Yahweh lives](#), and as [my master the king](#) lives, surely in whatever place where [my master the king](#) goes, there also will [your servant](#) go, whether that means living or dying."



## 2 Samuel 15:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Go ahead
- and continue with us
- So...marched with the king

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> So David said to Ittai, "Go ahead and continue with us." So Ittai the Gittite marched with the king, along with all his men and all the families who were with him.

## 2 Samuel 15:23

### All the country wept with a loud voice

Many of the people of Israel wept loudly when they saw the king leaving. Here this is generalized by saying that the whole country wept. Alternate translation: "All the people along the road wept" or "Many of the people wept" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### with a loud voice

Here the many people who were weeping are spoken of as if they shared one loud voice. Alternate translation: "loudly" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Kidron Valley

This is the name of a place near Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the country](#)
- [the people](#)
- [the people](#)
- [and as the king also himself](#)
- [toward](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> All [the country](#) wept with a loud voice as all [the people](#) passed by over the Kidron Valley, [and as the king also himself](#) crossed over. All [the people](#) traveled on the road [toward](#) the wilderness.

## 2 Samuel 15:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Zadok
- the Levites
- the Box of
- the Box of
- the Covenant of
- God
- God (2)
- Abiathar
- the people

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Even Zadok was present, along with all the Levites carrying the Box of the Covenant of God. They set the Box of God down, and then Abiathar joined them. They waited until all the people had passed by out of the city.

## 2 Samuel 15:25

### I find favor in the eyes of Yahweh

Here the “eyes of Yahweh” refer to Yahweh’s thoughts and opinion. If you “find favor” with someone it means that they are pleased with you. Alternate translation: “Yahweh is pleased with me” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

### where he lives

“where his presence is.” The ark of the covenant symbolizes Yahweh’s presence. This refers to the place where the ark is. Alternate translation: “where it is kept” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)
- [to Zadok](#)
- [Carry...back](#)
- [the Box of](#)
- [God](#)
- [favor](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [he will bring me back here](#)

### ULT

**25** [The king](#) said [to Zadok](#), “[Carry the Box of God back](#) into the city. If I find [favor](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), [he will bring me back here](#) and show me again the Box and the place where he lives.”

## 2 Samuel 15:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- I am...pleased
- good

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> But if he says, 'I am not pleased with you,' look, here am I, let him do to me whatever seems good to him."

## 2 Samuel 15:27

### Ahimaaz

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Abiathar

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 8:17](#).

### Are you not a seer?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke Zadok and can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You will be able to find out what is happening." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [Return into](#)
- [your son](#)
- [son of](#)
- [your...sons](#)
- [Abiathar](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> [The king](#) also said to [Zadok the priest](#), "Are you not a seer? [Return into](#) the city in peace, and your two [sons](#) with you, Ahimaaz [your son](#), and Jonathan [son of Abiathar](#)."

## 2 Samuel 15:28

### See

Here this word means for the listener to pay attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### until word comes from you

This refers to him sending a messenger to the king. Alternate translation: "until you send a messenger to me to inform me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### to inform me

Here the king implies he is to receive a message informing him about what is happening in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "to tell me what is happening in Jerusalem" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

• I

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> See, I will wait at the fords of the Arabah until word comes from you to inform me."

## 2 Samuel 15:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- So...carried...back into
- Zadok
- Abiathar
- the Box of
- God
- Jerusalem

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> So Zadok and Abiathar carried the Box of God back into Jerusalem, and they stayed there.



## 2 Samuel 15:30

### **barefoot**

wearing no shoes or sandals

### **his head covered**

This is a sign of mourning and shame. Alternate translation: "his head covered in mourning" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [and...head](#)
- [his head](#)
- [the people](#)
- [they went up](#)

### **ULT**

<sup>30</sup> But David ascended barefoot and weeping up the Mount of Olives, and he had his [head](#) covered. Every man of [the people](#) who were with him covered [his head](#), and [they went up](#) weeping as they walked.

## 2 Samuel 15:31

### Ahithophel

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 15:11](#).

### conspirators

people who join together against someone else

### please turn Ahithophel's advice into foolishness

David is asking Yahweh to make Ahithophel's advice foolish and useless. Alternate translation: "please let whatever advice Ahithophel gives be foolishness and unsuccessful" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [David](#)
- [O Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Someone told David saying, "Ahithophel is among the conspirators with [Absalom](#)." So [David](#) prayed, "O [Yahweh](#), please turn Ahithophel's advice into foolishness."

## 2 Samuel 15:32

### It came about

“It happened.” This phrase marks the next event in the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### at the top of the road

The word “top” is used here because David went up in elevation and is at the top of a hill. Alternate translation: “at the top of the hill” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### where God used to be worshiped

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “where people once worshiped God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Hushai

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Arkite

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### with his coat torn and earth on his head

This is an act showing shame or repentance. Here the word “earth” means dirt. Alternate translation: “He had torn his clothes and put dirt on his head to show that he was very sad” (See: [Symbolic Action](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [the top of the road](#)
- [God](#)
- [used to be worshiped](#)
- [with his coat](#)
- [his head](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> It came about that when [David](#) arrived at [the top of the road](#), where [God used to be worshiped](#), Hushai the Arkite came to meet him [with his coat torn](#) and earth on [his head](#).

## 2 Samuel 15:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> [David](#) said to him, "If you travel with me, then you will be a burden to me."

## 2 Samuel 15:34

### you will confuse Ahithophel's advice for me

David is suggest to Hushai that he oppose whatever Ahithopel advises. Alternate translation: "you can serve me by opposing Ahithophel's advice" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- you return to
- to Absalom
- your servant
- s servant
- your servant
- king
- your father

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> But if you return to the city and say to Absalom, 'I will be your servant, king, as I have been your father's servant in time past, so will I now be your servant,' then you will confuse Ahithophel's advice for me.

## 2 Samuel 15:35

### Will you not have the priests Zadok and Abiathar with you?

David asks this rhetorical question to tell Hushai that he will not be alone. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Zadok and Abiathar the priests will be there to help you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Will you not have [the priests Zadok and Abiathar](#) with you? So whatever you hear in [the king's palace](#), you must tell it [to Zadok and Abiathar the priests](#).

### whatever you hear

This is a generalization. It means all of the important and insightful things that he hears, not every single word he hears. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [to Zadok](#)
- [and Abiathar](#)
- [and Abiathar](#)
- [the king](#)
- [in...s palace](#)

## 2 Samuel 15:36

### Ahimaaz ... Jonathan

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### by their hand

The phrase “their hand” refers to the sons and means that they were to serve as messengers. Alternate translation: “their sons to tell me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [their...sons](#)
- [Zadok's son](#)
- [Abiathar's son](#)
- [by their hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> See that they have there with them their two [sons](#), Ahimaaz, [Zadok's son](#), and Jonathan, [Abiathar's son](#). You must send to me [by their hand](#) everything that you hear.”

## 2 Samuel 15:37

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- as Absalom
- Jerusalem

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> So Hushai, David's friend, came into the city as Absalom arrived and entered into Jerusalem.



## 2 Samuel 16

### 2 Samuel 16 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Absalom seeks advice from David's advisers

David's best adviser, Ahithophel, told Absalom to publicly seduce the concubines that David had left to take care of the palace. Because the concubines were the king's property, having sexual relations with a king's concubines implied that Absalom was now the king. This would show the people that the break with David was complete. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Simile

To show how seriously people took Ahithophel's advice, the author used a [Simile](#) comparing his advice to God's advice. "Now the advice of Ahithophel that he gave in those days was as if a man heard from the mouth of God himself."

## 2 Samuel 16:1

### Ziba

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Mephibosheth

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 4:4](#).

### two hundred loaves ... one hundred clusters ... one hundred bunches

"200 loaves...100 clusters...100 bunches" (See: [Numbers](#))

### loaves of bread

"cakes of bread"

### clusters of raisins ... bunches of figs

These phrases refer to raisins or figs pressed together.

### raisins

dried grapes

### a skin of wine

"a wineskin full of wine"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the servant of](#)
- [donkeys](#)
- [were...loaves of bread](#)
- [wine](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> When David had gone a short distance over the summit of the hill, Ziba [the servant of](#) Mephibosheth met him with a couple of saddled [donkeys](#); on them were 200 [loaves of bread](#), 100 clusters of raisins, and 100 bunches of figs, and a skin of [wine](#).

## 2 Samuel 16:2

### faint

tired and weak

### Translation Words - ULT

- The king
- the king
- The donkeys are
- for...s household
- for your men
- in the wilderness

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The king said to Ziba, "Why did you bring these things?" Ziba replied, "The donkeys are for the king's household to ride on, the bread and figs are for your men to eat, and the wine is for anyone who is faint in the wilderness to drink."

## 2 Samuel 16:3

### your master's grandson

"Mephibosheth, your master's grandson"

### grandson

the son of one's son or daughter

### Look

Here this word is used to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### house of Israel

This refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### will restore my father's kingdom to me

Having a descendant of Saul being allowed to rule is spoken of as the kingdom being restored to their family. Alternate translation: "will allow me to rule the kingdom that my grandfather ruled" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [your master](#)
- [s grandson](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [will restore](#)
- [my father](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The king said, "Then where is [your master's grandson](#)?" Ziba replied to [the king](#), "Look, he has stayed behind [in Jerusalem](#), for he said, 'Today [the house of Israel will restore my father's kingdom to me.](#)'"

## 2 Samuel 16:4

### Mephibosheth

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 4:4](#).

### I bow in humility to you

Ziba is not literally bowing before the king when he is speaking here. This means that he will serve the king with the same amount of humility he would be showing if he were literally bowing before him. Alternate translation: "I will humbly serve you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Let me find favor in your eyes

The phrase "find favor" means to be approved of by someone. Also, "eyes" is a metonym for sight, and sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "I want you to be pleased with me" or "I desire you for to be pleased with me" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [king](#)
- [I bow in humility to you](#)
- [my master](#)
- [favor](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then [the king](#) said to Ziba, "Look, all that belonged to Mephibosheth now belongs to you." Ziba answered, "[I bow in humility to you, my master, king](#). Let me find [favor](#) in your eyes."

## 2 Samuel 16:5

### Bahurim

Translate the name of this city the same as you did in [2 Samuel 3:16](#).

### Shimei ... Gera

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- King
- David
- came out
- He came out
- as he walked
- from the clan of
- from the clan of
- Saul
- son of
- cursing

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When King David approached Bahurim, there came out from there a man from the clan of Saul, whose name was Shimei son of Gera. He came out cursing as he walked.

## 2 Samuel 16:6

### in spite of

“even though there was”

### bodyguards

These are men who protect an important person.

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- the king
- the king
- s officials
- the army
- bodyguards

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> He threw stones at David and at all of the king's officials, in spite of the army and bodyguards who were on the king's right and left.

## 2 Samuel 16:7

### villain

someone who is evil, a criminal or lawbreaker

### man of blood

Here “blood” refers to all of men he was responsible for killing in battle. Alternate translation: “murderer” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Shimei called out in cursing, “[Go away](#), [get out of here](#), you villain, you man of blood!

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Go away](#)
- [get out of here](#)



## 2 Samuel 16:8

### Yahweh has repaid

Yahweh repays them by punishing them. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has punished" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### for the blood you shed within the family of Saul

Here "blood" refer to people who were killed from Saul's family. The king was responsible for them dying. Alternate translation: "for killing many of Saul's family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### in whose place you have reigned

David reigned as king over the same people whom Saul had previously reigned. Alternate translation: "in whose place you have reigned as king" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### into the hand of Absalom

Here "hand" refers to control. Alternate translation: "into the control of Absalom" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [has repaid...for](#)
- [You have come to ruin](#)
- [the blood you shed](#)
- [blood](#)
- [within the family of](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [into the hand of](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [your son](#)

### ULT

8 Yahweh has repaid all of you for the blood you shed within the family of Saul, in whose place you have reigned. Yahweh has given the kingdom into the hand of Absalom your son. You have come to ruin because you are a man of blood."

## 2 Samuel 16:9

### Abishai

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 2:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Zeruiah

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 2:13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then Abishai son of Zeruiah, said to the king, "Why should this dead dog curse [my master](#) the king? Please let me go over and take off [his head](#)."

## Why should this dead dog curse my master the king?

Abishai asked this question to express his anger at the man. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "This dead dog must not speak to the king this way." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## this dead dog

Here the man is being described as worthless by being compared to a dead dog. Alternate translation: "this worthless man" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [his head](#)
- [son](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Samuel 16:10

### What have I to do with you, sons of Zeruiah?

This rhetorical question is asked to correct the sons of Zeruiah. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I do not want to know what you think!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Perhaps he is cursing me because

"He may be cursing me because"

### Who then could say to him, 'Why are you cursing the king?'

This is said as a rhetorical question to emphasize that the answer is "no one." This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one then can ask him, 'Why are you cursing the king?'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> But [the king](#) said, "What have I to do with you, [sons of](#) Zeruiah? Perhaps he is cursing me because [Yahweh](#) has said to him, 'Curse [David](#).' Who then could say to him, 'Why are you cursing the king?'"

## 2 Samuel 16:11

### my son, who was born from my body

David describes his son this way to emphasize the close bond between a father and his son. Alternate translation: “my own son” or “my dear son” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### wants to take my life

This is a polite way to refer to killing someone. Alternate translation: “wants to kill me” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### ULT

**11** So David said to Abishai and to all his servants, “Look, my son, who was born from my body, wants to take my life. How much more may this Benjamite now desire my ruin? Leave him alone and let him curse, for Yahweh has commanded him to do it.”

### How much more may this Benjamite now desire my ruin?

David uses this rhetorical question to express that he is not surprised that the man wants to kill him. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “Of course this Benjamite desires my ruin!” or “I am not surprised this Benjamite desires my ruin as well!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### desire my ruin

Here David describes the man’s desire to kill him as if David were something that the man wanted to ruin. Alternate translation: “desire me to be killed” or “desire to kill me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Leave him alone and let him curse

Here the phrase “leave him alone” means to not stop him from what he is doing. Alternate translation: “Do not stop him from cursing me” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- his servants
- my son
- was born
- wants to take
- my life
- this Benjamite
- and let him curse
- Yahweh

## 2 Samuel 16:12

### will look at

Here “looking” means “considering.” Alternate translation: “will consider” (See: [Idiom](#))

### the misery unleashed on me

Here David speaks of misery as if it were a dangerous animal that the Benjamite unleashed on him. (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- and repay...with
- and repay...with
- good

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Perhaps Yahweh will look at the misery unleashed on me, and repay me with good for his cursing me today.”

## 2 Samuel 16:13

### Shimei went beside him up on the hillside

Shimei was walking parallel to David and his men, though Shimei was up higher on the hillside.

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- went
- as he went
- cursing

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> So David and his men traveled on the road, while Shimei went beside him up on the hillside, cursing and throwing dust and stones at him as he went.

## 2 Samuel 16:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the people

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Then the king and all the people who were with him became weary, and he rested when they stopped for the night.

## 2 Samuel 16:15

### Ahithophel

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 15:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [As for Absalom](#)
- [the men of...who were with him](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

**15** [As for Absalom](#) and all [the men of Israel who were with him](#), they came to [Jerusalem](#), and Ahithophel was with him.



## 2 Samuel 16:16

### Hushai

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 15:32](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### It came about

"It happened that." This phrase is used to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### Arkite

See how you translated the name of this people group in [2 Samuel 15:32](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [Long live](#)
- [Long live \(2\)](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)

### ULT

**16** It came about when Hushai the Arkite, [David's](#) friend, had come to [Absalom](#), that Hushai said to [Absalom](#), "Long live the king! Long live the king!"

## 2 Samuel 16:17

### loyalty

a strong feeling of support and love

### Is this your loyalty to your friend? Why did you not go with him?

These rhetorical questions are asked to criticize Hushai. They can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You have been a loyal friend to David; you should have gone with him." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Absalom said to Hushai, "Is this [your loyalty](#) to your friend? Why [did you not go](#) with him?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [your loyalty](#)
- [did you...go](#)

## 2 Samuel 16:18

### the one whom Yahweh

Hushai is referring to Absalom.

### the one whom ... that is the man ... with him

Here Hushai is referring to Absalom in the third person to take emphasize off of him and place it on Yahweh and the people who chose him. This can be written in second person. Alternate translation: "you are the one whom ... you are the man ... with you" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### ULT

**18** Hushai said to [Absalom](#), "No! Instead, the one whom [Yahweh](#) and this [people](#) and all the men of [Israel](#) have chosen, that is the man to whom I will belong, and I will stay with him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and...people](#)
- [Israel](#)

## 2 Samuel 16:19

### what man should I serve? Should I not serve in the presence of his son?

Hushai asks these rhetorical questions to emphasize that he wants to serve Absalom. They can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I should serve only David's son, so I will serve in his presence." or "I should serve you, for you are David's son." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [should...serve](#)
- [I have served](#)
- [his son](#)
- [your father](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Also, what man should I [serve](#)? Should I not serve in the presence of [his son](#)? As [I have served](#) in [your father's](#) presence, I will serve in your presence."

## 2 Samuel 16:20

### Ahithophel

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 15:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)

#### ULT

**20** Then [Absalom](#) said to Ahithophel, "Give us your advice about what we should do."

## 2 Samuel 16:21

### Go into your father's slave wives

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "Have sexual relations with your father's slave wives" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### to keep the palace

The phrase "to keep" means to take care of. Alternate translation: "to take care of the palace" (See: [Idiom](#))

### become a stench to your father

Ahithophel speaks of Absalom offending his father as if he would become something that had a strong and offensive odor. Alternate translation: "become offensive to your father" or "greatly insulted father" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Then the hands of all who are with you will be strong

Here the people who followed Absalom are referred to by their hands. The news will strengthen the peoples' loyalty to Absalom and encourage them. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "The news of this will strengthen the loyalty of all who follow you" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [your father](#)
- [your father](#) (2)
- [the palace](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the hands of](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Ahithophel answered [Absalom](#), "Go into [your father](#)'s slave wives whom he has left to keep [the palace](#), and all [Israel](#) will hear that you have become a stench to [your father](#). Then [the hands of](#) all who are with you will be strong."

## 2 Samuel 16:22

### they spread

“they set up”

### Absalom went in to his father’s slave wives

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “Absalom had sexual relations with his father’s slave wives” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### in the sight of all Israel

This means that people were able to see the tent and Absalom walking in and out of the tent with the women. The phrase “all of Israel” is a generalization, for only people near the palace could see it. Alternate translation: “where the Israelites could see him go into the tent” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for Absalom](#)
- [and Absalom](#)
- [his father](#)
- [Israel](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> So they spread [for Absalom](#) a tent on the top of the palace, [and Absalom](#) went in to [his father](#)’s slave wives in the sight of all [Israel](#).

## 2 Samuel 16:23

### Now the advice of Ahithophel ... was as if a man heard

Here the author compare how much people trusted Ahithophel's advice with how much they would trust advice directly from God. Alternate translation: "Now people trusted the advice of Ahithophel in those days in the same way they would have trusted it if had come" (See: [Simile](#))

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Now the advice of Ahithophel that [he gave](#) in those days was as if a man heard from the mouth of [God himself](#). That was how all of Ahithophel's advice was viewed by both David and [Absalom](#).

### as if a man heard from the mouth of God himself

Here God's mouth represents himself and emphasizes his speech. Alternate translation: "as if God had said it with his own mouth" or "as if a man heard it spoken by God himself" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

### all of Ahithophel's advice was viewed by both David and Absalom

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "both David and Absalom viewed all of Ahithophel's advice"

### was viewed

"was thought of"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he gave](#)
- [God himself](#)
- [Absalom](#)



## **2 Samuel 17**

### **2 Samuel 17 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Confusion**

Ahithophel gives good advise to Absalom, but Hushai confuses Absalom. God is using the misleading advice to protect David, his king.

## 2 Samuel 17:1

### Ahithophel

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 15:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### twelve thousand men

"12,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

### arise and

"begin to"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Ahithophel said to [Absalom](#),  
"Now let me choose 12000 men, and I  
will arise and pursue [David](#) tonight."

## 2 Samuel 17:2

### come on

“come to”

### weary and weak

These words mean basically the same thing and are used together to emphasize how weak David was. Alternate translation: “weak” (See: [Doublet](#))

### will surprise him with fear

Here the word “fear” can be expressed with the adjective “afraid.” Alternate translation: “will surprise him and make him afraid” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### I will attack only the king

It is implied that he intends to kill the king. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “I will kill only the king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and weak](#)
- [The people](#)
- [the king](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> I will come on him while he is weary [and weak](#) and will surprise him with fear. [The people](#) who are with him will flee, and I will attack only [the king](#).

## 2 Samuel 17:3

### bring back all the people

This refers to all of the people who were with David. Alternate translation: “bring back all of the people who were with him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### like a bride coming to her husband

Here Ahithophel speaks of the peoples’ happiness by comparing it to a bride’s happiness. Alternate translation: “and they will come happily, like a bride is happy when she comes to her husband” or “and they will come happily” (See: [Simile](#))

### be at peace

This means to have peace or to live peacefully. Alternate translation: “live peacefully” (See: [Idiom](#))

### under you

This refers to being under the king’s authority. Alternate translation: “under your authority” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will bring back](#)
- [the people](#)
- [the people \(2\)](#)
- [like a bride coming to](#)
- [at peace](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> I will bring back all the people to you, like a bride coming to her husband, and all the people will be at peace under you.”

## 2 Samuel 17:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- the elders of
- Israel

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> What Ahithophel said pleased  
Absalom and all the elders of Israel.

## 2 Samuel 17:5

### Hushai the Arkite

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 15:32](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [call](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then [Absalom](#) said, "Now [call](#) Hushai the Arkite, too, and let us hear what he says."

## 2 Samuel 17:6

### Ahithophel

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 15:12](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [Absalom](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When Hushai had come to [Absalom](#), [Absalom](#) explained to him what Ahithophel had said and then asked Hushai, "Should we do what Ahithophel has said? If not, tell us what you advise."

## 2 Samuel 17:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- has given
- good

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So Hushai said to Absalom, "The advice that Ahithophel has given this time is not good."



## 2 Samuel 17:8

### they are like a bear robbed of her cubs

The anger of the soldiers here is being compared to that of a mother bear whose cubs are taken from her. Alternate translation: “they are angry, like a mother bear whose cubs have been taken from her” or “they are very angry” (See: [Simile](#))

### a bear

a large furry animal that walks on four legs and has sharp claws and teeth

### is a man of war

This means that he has fought in many battles and knows well the ways of war. Alternate translation: “has fought in many battles” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [know](#)
- [your father](#)
- [Your father is](#)
- [strong warriors](#)
- [and that...are bitter](#)
- [the army](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Hushai added, “You [know your father](#) and his men are [strong warriors](#), and [that they are bitter](#), and they are like a bear robbed of her cubs in a field. [Your father is](#) a man of war; he will not sleep with [the army](#) tonight.”

## 2 Samuel 17:9

### Look

Here this word is used to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### pit

a deep hole in the ground

### or in some other place

This is another place he may be hiding. Alternate translation: "or hidden in some other place" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### when some of your men have been killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when his soldiers kill some of your men" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### A slaughter has taken place among the soldiers who follow Absalom

The noun "slaughter" means an event where many people are brutally killed. This can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "Many of the soldiers who follow Absalom have been slaughtered" or "The enemy soldiers have killed many of the soldiers who follow Absalom" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [among the soldiers](#)
- [Absalom](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Look, right now he is probably hidden in some pit or in some other place. It will happen that when some of your men have been killed at the beginning of an attack, that whoever hears it will say, 'A slaughter has taken place [among the soldiers](#) who follow [Absalom](#).'

## 2 Samuel 17:10

### whose hearts are like the heart of a lion

Here the soldiers are referred to by their “hearts.” Also, their strong bravery is compared to that of a lion’s. Alternate translation: “who are as brave as lions” or “who are very brave” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the bravest soldiers
- and that the men...are very strong
- the bravest soldiers
- and that the men...are very strong
- hearts
- Israel
- knows
- your father is
- a mighty man

### ULT

**10** Then even [the bravest soldiers](#), whose [hearts](#) are like the heart of a lion, will be afraid because all [Israel knows](#) that [your father is a mighty man](#), and that the men who are with him [are very strong](#).

## 2 Samuel 17:11

### that all Israel should be gathered together to you

This can be stated in active form. Also, here “all Israel” represents only the Israelite soldiers. Alternate translation: “that you should gather together all of the Israelite soldiers” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> So I advise you that all Israel should be gathered together to you, from Dan to Beersheba, as numerous as the sands that are by the sea, and that you go to battle in person.

### from Dan to Beersheba

This phrase means from the northern border of Israel to the southern border. Alternate translation: “from the whole nation of Israel” (See: [Merism](#))

### as numerous as the sands that are by the sea

This is an exaggeration where all the grains of sand on a beach are compared to the number of Israelite soldiers. Alternate translation: “so many that they can barely be counted” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Simile](#))

### that you go to battle in person

The phrase “in person” means to go yourself and not send someone else instead. Alternate translation: “then lead them yourself into battle” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I advise you
- Israel
- that...should be gathered together
- that...should be gathered together
- Beersheba
- Beersheba
- and that you go
- in person

## 2 Samuel 17:12

### come on him

This means to purposefully go to where he is and then to attack. (See: [Idiom](#))

### we will cover him as the dew falls on the ground

Absalom's army is described as covering David's army like the dew covers the ground in the morning. Alternate translation: "we will overwhelm and completely defeat David's army" (See: [Simile](#))

### dew

the fog or misty cloud of water that can fall onto the ground during the night, covering the ground and leaving it wet in the morning

### We will not leave even one of his men ... alive

This negative sentence is used for emphasis and can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "We will kill every one of his men" (See: [Litotes](#))

### him himself

Both these words refer to David. Alternate translation: "David himself" (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and we will cover](#)

#### ULT

**12** Then we will come on him wherever he may be found, [and we will cover](#) him as the dew falls on the ground. We will not leave even one of his men, or him himself, alive.

## 2 Samuel 17:13

### then all Israel

This refers to Israel's soldiers, not to all of Israel. Alternate translation: "then all of our soldiers" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### will bring ropes to that city and we will drag it into the river

This means that the soldiers would tear down the city walls and drag the pieces to river. Alternate translation: "will destroy the city and drag the stones to the river with ropes" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### until there is no longer even a small stone found there

This is an exaggeration to describe how completely they will destroy the city. They would not literally sweep away every small stone from the city. Alternate translation: "until the city is completely destroyed" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he retreats](#)
- [Israel](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> If [he retreats](#) into a city, then all [Israel](#) will bring ropes to that city and we will drag it into the river, until there is no longer even a small stone found there."

## 2 Samuel 17:14

### Hushai the Arkite

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 15:32](#). Arkite is the name of a people group.

### Ahithophel

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 15:12](#).

### the rejection of Ahithophel's good advice

The word "rejection" can be expressed with the verb "reject." Alternate translation: "for the men of Israel to reject Ahithophel's good advice" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### to bring destruction on Absalom

To "bring" something on someone means to cause it to happen to them. Alternate translation: "to cause a disaster to happen to Absalom" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [better](#)
- [good](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [had ordained](#)
- [destruction](#)

### ULT

**14** Then [Absalom](#) and the men of [Israel](#) said, "Hushai the Arkite's advice is [better](#) than Ahithophel's." [Yahweh had ordained](#) the rejection of Ahithophel's [good](#) advice in order to bring [destruction](#) on [Absalom](#).

## 2 Samuel 17:15

### Zadok ... Abiathar

See how you translated these men's names in [2 Samuel 15:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### in such and such a way

This phrase, meaning "like this," refers to what Ahithophel advised Absalom earlier beginning in [2 Samuel 17:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Zadok](#)
- [Abiathar](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [advised](#)
- [have advised something else](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [the elders of](#)
- [Israel](#)

### ULT

**15** Then Hushai said to [Zadok](#) and to [Abiathar the priests](#), "Ahithophel advised [Absalom](#) and [the elders of Israel](#) in such and such a way, but I [have advised something else](#)."



## 2 Samuel 17:16

### the fords of the Arabah

A ford is a shallow part of a river where people can walk across. The Arabah is the land along both sides of the Jordan River.

### by all means

This means to make sure that you do something. Alternate translation: "be sure to" or "make sure that you" (See: [Idiom](#))

### the king will be swallowed up

Here the king and his people being killed is describes as if they were "swallowed" by their enemy. Alternate translation: "the king will be killed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the people](#)

### ULT

**16** Now then, go quickly and report to David; say to him, 'Do not camp tonight at the fords of the Arabah, but by all means cross over, or [the king](#) will be swallowed up along with all [the people](#) who are with him.'

## 2 Samuel 17:17

### Jonathan ... Ahimaaz

See how you translated these men's names in [2 Samuel 15:27](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### When the message came

Here the "message" is spoken of as coming to them, when really it is the woman who came to them bringing the message. Alternate translation: "When she brought them a message" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### spring of Rogel

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [were staying](#)
- [A female servant](#)
- [When the message came](#)
- [King](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

**17** Now Jonathan and Ahimaaz [were staying](#) at the spring of Rogel. [A female servant](#) used to go and inform them what they needed to know, for they could not risk being seen going into the city. [When the message came](#), then they were to go and tell [King David](#).

## 2 Samuel 17:18

### this time

“one time”

### So Jonathan and Ahimaaz went away

It is implied that they found out that the young man had told Absalom about them being there. This can be stated clearly.

Alternate translation: “Jonathan and Ahimaaz found out what the young man had done, so they went away” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**18** But a young man saw them this time and told Absalom. So Jonathan and Ahimaaz went away quickly and came to the house of a man in Bahurim, who had a well in his courtyard, into which they descended.

### Bahurim

This is the name of a small town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### they descended

“they lowered themselves and hid”

### Translation Words - ULT

- a young man
- Absalom
- the house of
- in his courtyard

## 2 Samuel 17:19

### Jonathan ... Ahimaaz

See how you translated these men's names in [2 Samuel 15:27](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the covering for the well](#)
- [s opening](#)
- [one knew](#)

### ULT

**19** The man's wife took [the covering for the well](#) and spread it over the well's [opening](#), and tossed grain over it, so no [one knew](#) Jonathan and Ahimaaz were in the well.

## 2 Samuel 17:20

### the woman of the house

“the man’s wife”

### Ahimaaz ... Jonathan

See how you translated these men’s names in [2 Samuel 15:27](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- s men
- of the house
- So after they had looked around
- they returned
- to Jerusalem

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Absalom’s men came to the woman of the house and said, “Where are Ahimaaz and Jonathan?” The woman told them, “They have crossed over the river.” So after they had looked around and could not find them, they returned to Jerusalem.

## 2 Samuel 17:21

### It came about

“It happened.” This phrase marks the next event in the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### cross quickly over the water

Here “the water” refers to the Jordan River. Alternate translation: “cross quickly over the river” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### has given such and such advice

The idiom “such and such” is used in the place of information that is already known by the reader. Here it refers to what Ahithophel advised Absalom beginning in [2 Samuel 17:1](#). This information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “has advised that Absalom send him with an army to attack you now” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- they had left
- to King
- David
- him
- and cross
- has given...advice

### ULT

**21** It came about after [they had left](#) that Jonathan and Ahimaaz came up out of the well. They went to report [to King David](#); they said to [him](#), “Get up [and cross](#) quickly over the water because Ahithophel [has given](#) such and such [advice](#) about you.”

## 2 Samuel 17:22

### By morning daylight not one of them had failed to cross over the Jordan

This negative sentence is used to emphasize that they all crossed the river. It can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "By morning daylight every one of them had crossed over the Jordan" (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [the people](#)
- [and they crossed over](#)
- [the Jordan](#)
- [the Jordan](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then [David](#) arose and all [the people](#) who were with him, [and they crossed over the Jordan](#). By morning daylight not one of them had failed to cross over [the Jordan](#).

## 2 Samuel 17:23

### Ahithophel saw

“Ahithophel knew” or “Ahithophel realized”

### his advice had not been followed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Absalom had not followed his advice” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### saddled his donkey

placed a blanket or small leather seat on the donkey so he could sit on it

### set his affairs in order

He prepared for his death by telling his family what to do after he died. Alternate translation: “he prepared for his death” (See: [Idiom](#))

### In this way

“And this is how”

### was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they buried him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [his donkey](#)
- [home](#)
- [his affairs in order](#)
- [set](#)
- [In this way he died](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> When Ahithophel saw that his advice had not been followed, he saddled [his donkey](#) and left. He went [home](#) to his own city, [set his affairs in order](#), and hanged himself. [In this way he died](#) and was buried in the tomb of his father.



## 2 Samuel 17:24

### Mahanaim

Translate the name of this place the same as you did in [2 Samuel 2:8](#).  
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [As for Absalom](#)
- [the Jordan](#)
- [Israel](#)

### ULT

**24** Then David came to Mahanaim. [As for Absalom](#), he crossed over [the Jordan](#), he and all the men of [Israel](#) with him.

## 2 Samuel 17:25

### Amasa ... Joab ... Jether ... Nahash

These are the names of men. See how you translated Joab and Zeruiah (Joab's mother) in [2 Samuel 2:13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Ishmaelite

This word means that the person is descended from Ishmael. Some versions say "Israelite" here. See the footnote. You may want to choose the word that is used in the majority language Bible in your area.

### who went in to Abigail

This is a polite way of speaking of sexual relations. You may have to use other words in your translation. Alternate translation: "who had sexual relations with Abigail" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Abigail ... Zeruiah

These are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [the son of](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> [Absalom](#) had set Amasa over the army instead of [Joab](#). Amasa was [the son of](#) a man called Jether the Ishmaelite <sup>[1]</sup>, who went in to Abigail, who was the daughter of Nahash and sister of Zeruiah, the mother of [Joab](#).

## 2 Samuel 17:26

### Gilead

Translate the name of this place the same as you did in [2 Samuel 2:9](#).  
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Then [Israel](#) and [Absalom](#) camped in  
the land of [Gilead](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [and Absalom](#)
- [the land of](#)
- [Gilead](#)

## 2 Samuel 17:27

### It came about

This phrase is used to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### Mahanaim ... Rabbah ... Lo Debar ... Rogelim

These are the names of cities or places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Shobi ... Nahash ... Machir ... Ammiel ... Barzillai

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Ammonites ... Gileadite

These are the names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [son of](#)
- [the Ammonites](#)
- [son of](#)
- [from Rabbah of](#)
- [the Gileadite](#)

### ULT

**27** It came about when [David](#) had come to Mahanaim, that Shobi [son of Nahash from Rabbah of the Ammonites](#), and Machir [son of Ammiel from Lo Debar](#), and Barzillai [the Gileadite from Rogelim](#),

## 2 Samuel 17:28

### sleeping mats and blankets

A mat is something soft to sleep on, and a blanket is a cloth covering for warmth.

### flour

crushed grain made into powder and used to make bread

### roasted

cooked with dry heat

### beans

seeds that are cooked and eaten

### lentils

a kind of seed that is cooked and eaten

### ULT

**28** brought sleeping mats and blankets, bowls and pots, and wheat, barley flour, roasted grain, beans, lentils,

## 2 Samuel 17:29

### curds

milk that has soured and become solid

### thirsty

in need of water or some other drink

### Translation Words - ULT

- honey
- sheep
- and milk curds
- The people are
- in the wilderness

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> honey, butter, sheep, and milk curds, so that David and the people with him could eat. These men had said, "The people are hungry, weary, and thirsty in the wilderness."

17:25 <sup>[1]</sup>

## 2 Samuel 18

### 2 Samuel 18 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter tells of the defeat and death of Absalom, ending this section on Absalom's rebellion.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### David's mercy

David reorganized his army and sent them out to battle, but told them to be merciful to Absalom. When David's army defeated Absalom's army, Absalom fled on a mule, but his hair caught in a tree limb and the mule ran on, leaving him hanging. One of David's soldiers saw him and told Joab. Joab went and killed him. When David heard about this he mourned for his son, Absalom. (See: [mercy](#), [merciful](#))

## 2 Samuel 18:1

### David counted the soldiers who were with him and appointed

David did not count all of the people himself, rather other men counted them. Alternate translation: “David commanded for the soldiers who were with him to be counted and he appointed” or “David arranged the soldiers who were with him and appointed” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> David counted the soldiers who were with him and appointed captains of thousands and captains of hundreds over them.

### captains of thousands and captains of hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these captains led. Alternate translation: “captains of 1,000 soldiers and captains of 100 soldiers” or (2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “captains of large military divisions and captains of smaller military divisions” (See: [Numbers](#))

### captains

A captain is a person who is in authority over a group of soldiers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [counted](#)
- [and appointed](#)
- [the soldiers](#)
- [captains of](#)
- [captains of...and](#)



## 2 Samuel 18:2

### one-third ... another third

“one-third of the army ... another third of the army.” A “third” is one part out of three equal parts. (See: [Fractions](#))

### Abishai ... Zeruiah

See how you translated these men’s names in [2 Samuel 2:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Ittai

See how you translated this man’s name in [2 Samuel 15:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Gittite

This refers to a person from Gath, which is a Philistine city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### I will certainly go out with you myself, too

This means that he will go out with them to battle. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “I myself will go with you to battle” or “I personally will go with you into battle” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [the army](#)
- [the army](#)
- [I will certainly go out](#)
- [I will certainly go out](#)
- [under the command of](#)
- [under the command of](#)
- [under the command of](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [son of](#)
- [s brother](#)
- [The king](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then [David](#) sent out [the army](#), one-third [under the command of Joab](#), another third [under the command of Abishai son of Zeruiah, Joab’s brother](#), and still another third [under the command of Ittai the Gittite](#). [The king](#) said to [the army](#), “I will certainly go out with you myself, too.”

## 2 Samuel 18:3

### half of us

The word “half” refers to one out of two equal parts. (See: [Numbers](#))

### you are worth ten thousand of us

This means that the enemy army considering killing David of greater worth than killing 10,000 of the other men. The number 10,000 here is an exaggeration used to emphasize a very great number of people. Alternate translation: “they would rather kill you than to kill 10,000 of us” or “killing you is worth more to them than killing a great number of us” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But [the men](#) said, “You must not [go to battle](#), for if we flee away [they will](#) not [care](#) about us, or if half of us die [they will](#) not [care](#). But you are worth 10000 of us! Therefore [it is better](#) that you be ready to help us from the city.”

### ten thousand

“10,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

### that you be ready to help us from the city

David could help them from the city by advising them and sending men to help them. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “that you stay here in the city and send help to us” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the men](#)
- [You must...go to battle](#)
- [they will...care](#)
- [they will...care](#)
- [it is better](#)

## 2 Samuel 18:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- The king
- best
- by
- the city gate
- the army

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So **the king** answered them, "I will do whatever seems **best** to you." **The king** stood **by the city gate** while all **the army** went out by hundreds and by thousands.

## 2 Samuel 18:5

### Abishai

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 2:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Ittai

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 15:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> The king commanded Joab, Abishai, and Ittai saying, "Deal gently for my sake with the young man, with Absalom." All the people heard that the king had given the captains this command about Absalom.

## Deal gently for my sake with the young man, with Absalom

"For my sake, do not harm the young man, Absalom." The phrase "Deal gently" means to be kind to someone and not to harm them.

### my sake

"my well-being" or "my account"

## Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [with the young man](#)
- [with Absalom](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [the people](#)
- [the captains](#)

## 2 Samuel 18:6

### went out into the countryside against Israel

This means that they went out and fought against them in battle. Alternate translation: “went out into the countryside and fought against Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### against Israel

Here “Israel” refers to their soldiers, not all of the Israelites. Alternate translation: “against the Israelite soldiers” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- So...went out into
- the army
- Israel
- Ephraim

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So the army went out into the countryside against Israel; the battle spread into the forest of Ephraim.

## 2 Samuel 18:7

### The army of Israel was defeated there before the soldiers of David

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "There the soldiers of David defeated the army of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### a great slaughter

an event where many people are brutally killed

### twenty thousand men

"20,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The army of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the soldiers of](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> [The army of Israel](#) was defeated there before [the soldiers of David](#); there was a great slaughter there that day of 20000 men.

## 2 Samuel 18:8

### more men were consumed by the forest than by the sword

Here “the forest” is described as if it were alive and could act. “The sword” refers to David’s soldiers who fought with swords. Alternate translation: “dangerous things in the forest killed more men than David’s soldiers killed with their swords” (See: [Personification](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [throughout](#)
- [the...countryside](#)
- [men](#)
- [by](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The battle spread [throughout](#) the whole [countryside](#), and more [men](#) were consumed by the forest than [by](#) the sword that day.

## 2 Samuel 18:9

### Absalom happened to meet some of David's soldiers

This is an event that happened during the battle. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "During the battle, Absalom happened to meet some of David's soldiers" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### his head was caught up in the tree branches

Absalom had long hair that got caught in the tree branches.

Alternate translation: "his hair was caught in the tree branches" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### dangling

hanging or swinging loosely

### between the ground and the sky

"in the air"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Absalom
- Absalom
- some of...s soldiers
- David
- his head
- the ground
- the sky

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Absalom happened to meet some of David's soldiers. Absalom was riding his mule, and the mule went under the thick branches of a large oak tree, and his head was caught up in the tree branches. He was left dangling between the ground and the sky while the mule he was riding kept going.



## 2 Samuel 18:10

### Look

Here this word is used to draw a person's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [hanging](#)

### ULT

**10** Someone saw this and told [Joab](#),  
"Look, I saw [Absalom hanging](#) in an oak  
tree!"

## 2 Samuel 18:11

### Why did you not strike him down to the ground?

This rhetorical question means that he should have killed him. This question can be written as a statement. The phrase “strike down” means to kill. Alternate translation: “You should have struck him down to the ground!” or “You should have killed him immediately!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Euphemism](#))

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> [Joab](#) said to the man who told him about Absalom, “Look! You saw him! Why did you not strike him [down to the ground](#)? I would have given you ten [silver shekels](#) and a belt.”

### ten silver shekels

This can be written in modern units. Alternate translation: “ten silver coins” or “110 grams of silver” (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### belt

This is a special belt that shows people that someone is a great soldier and should be honored.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [down to the ground](#)
- [silver shekels](#)

## 2 Samuel 18:12

### a thousand silver shekels

“1,000 silver shekels.” This can be stated in modern units. Alternate translation: “1,000 silver coins” or “11 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Numbers](#))

### would not have reached out my hand against the king’s son

The phrase “reached out my hand” means to attack. Alternate translation: “would not have attacked the king’s son” (See: [Idiom](#))

### No one must touch

Here “touching” refers to “harming.” Alternate translation: “No one must harm” or “Do not harm” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [I](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [received](#)
- [my hand](#)
- [silver shekels](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [s son](#)
- [command](#)
- [must touch](#)

### ULT

**12** The man replied to [Joab](#), “Even if I [received](#) 1000 [silver shekels](#), still I would not have reached out [my hand](#) against [the king’s son](#), because we all heard [the king command](#) you, Abishai, and Ittai, saying, ‘No one [must touch](#) the young man [Absalom](#).’

## 2 Samuel 18:13

### a falsehood

The word “falsehood” can be expressed with a verbal phrase. Also, this refers to disobeying the king’s command. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “doing something that is wrong” or “by disobeying the king” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**13** If I had risked [my life](#) by a falsehood (and there is nothing hidden from [the king](#)), you would have abandoned me.”

### there is nothing hidden from the king

Here the man speaks about how the king knows about almost everything that happens as if everything were a physical object he knew the location of. Alternate translation: “there is nothing that the king does not know” or “the king hears about everything that happens” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my life](#)
- [the king](#)

## 2 Samuel 18:14

### I will not wait for you

Joab meant that he should not continue talking to the man. Alternate translation: "I will not waste anymore time talking to you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### heart of Absalom

Here Absalom's heart refers to his chest or upper body. Alternate translation: "chest" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [javelins](#)
- [through the heart of](#)
- [and hanging](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [while he was...alive](#)

#### ULT

**14** Then [Joab](#) said, "I will not wait for you." So Joab took three [javelins](#) in his hand and thrust them [through the heart of Absalom, while he was still alive and hanging](#) from the oak.

## 2 Samuel 18:15

### armor

This refers to both the armor he would wear to protect himself and to his weapons. Alternate translation: "armor and weapons" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [young men](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [and killed him](#)

### ULT

**15** Then ten [young men](#) who carried [Joab's armor](#) surrounded [Absalom](#), attacked him, and killed him.

## 2 Samuel 18:16

### Then Joab blew the trumpet, and the army returned from pursuing Israel, for Joab held back the army

This describes what Joab commanded by blowing the trumpet.

Alternate translation: "Then Joab blew the trumpet to call back the army, and the army returned from pursuing Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Then Joab blew the trumpet, and the army returned from pursuing Israel, for Joab held back the army.

### returned from pursuing Israel

Here "Israel" refers to the Israelite army. Alternate translation: "returned from pursuing the Israelite army" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- Joab
- the trumpet
- the army
- the army
- and...returned
- Israel
- held back

## 2 Samuel 18:17

### They took Absalom and threw him

“They took Absalom’s body and threw it”

### they buried his body under a very large pile of stones

After putting his body in the pit they covered it with a pile of stones.

This can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: “they covered his body with a huge pile of stones” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### while all Israel fled

Here “all Israel” refers to the Israelite soldiers. The word “fled” means “ran away.” Alternate translation: “while all the Israelite soldiers ran away” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [Israel](#)

#### ULT

**17** They took [Absalom](#) and threw him into a large pit in the forest; they buried his body under a very large pile of stones, while all [Israel](#) fled, every man to his own home.



## 2 Samuel 18:18

### the King's Valley

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### to carry along the memory of my name

Absalom uses the phrase "my name" to refer to himself and his family line. Alternate translation: "to carry on my family name, by which people would remember me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

**18** Now Absalom, while still alive, had built for himself a large stone pillar in the King's Valley, for he said, "I have no son to carry along the memory of my name." He named the pillar after his own name, so it is called Absalom's Monument to this very day.

### so it is called Absalom's Monument to this very day

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so people called it Absalom's Monument from that day on" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### to this very day

This refers to the present time when this book of the Bible was written.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Now Absalom](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [the King](#)
- [son](#)
- [of my name](#)
- [his own name](#)
- [He named](#)
- [so it is called](#)
- [s Monument](#)

## 2 Samuel 18:19

### Ahimaaz

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 15:27](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### run to the king with the good news

Here Ahimaaz speaks of running to go and tell the king the good news as if the good news were a object that he were carrying. Alternate translation: "run to tell the king the good news" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the hand of his enemies

Here "hand" refers to control. Alternate translation: "the control of his enemies" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [to the king](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [from the hand of](#)
- [his enemies](#)

### ULT

**19** Then Ahimaaz [son of Zadok](#) said, "Let me now run [to the king](#) with the good news, how [Yahweh](#) has rescued him [from the hand of his enemies](#)."

## 2 Samuel 18:20

### the bearer of news

“the one who tells the news”

### you will bear no news

This refers to not bearing the news to the king. Alternate translation:

“you will not tell the news to the king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Joab answered him, “You will not be the bearer of news today; you must do it another day. Today you will bear no news because the king’s son is dead.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- the king
- s son

## 2 Samuel 18:21

### tell the king what you have seen

Joab is telling him to go and tell the king about the news of the battle.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- to Joab
- Go
- the king
- bowed down

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then Joab said to a Cushite, “Go, tell the king what you have seen.” The Cushite bowed down to Joab, and ran.

## 2 Samuel 18:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- my son
- Zadok
- Joab
- Joab

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then Ahimaaz son of Zadok said again to Joab, “Regardless of what may happen, please let me also run and follow the Cushite.” Joab replied, “Why do you want to run, my son, seeing that you will have no reward for the news?”

## 2 Samuel 18:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- and outran

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> "Whatever happens," said Ahimaaz, "I will run." So Joab answered him, "Run." Then Ahimaaz ran by the way of the plain, and outran the Cushite.

## 2 Samuel 18:24

### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line and the beginning of a new part of the story.

### raised his eyes

Here the watchman looking to see something is spoken of as if he lifted up his eyes. Alternate translation: "looked out beyond the city" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the...gates](#)
- [the gate](#)

### ULT

**24** Now David was sitting between the inner and outer [gates](#). The watchman had gone up to the roof of [the gate](#) to the wall and raised his eyes. As he looked, he saw a man approaching, running alone.

## 2 Samuel 18:25

### there is news in his mouth

Here the king speaks of the man having a message as if the news were an object sitting in his mouth. Alternate translation: "he has news to tell us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [shouted out](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [came closer](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> The watchman [shouted out](#) and told [the king](#). Then [the king](#) said, "If he is alone, there is news in his mouth." The runner [came closer](#) and neared the city.



## 2 Samuel 18:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- and...called
- the gatekeeper
- The king

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Then the watchman noticed another man running, and the watchman called to the gatekeeper; he said, "Look, there is another man running alone." The king said, "He is also bringing news."

## 2 Samuel 18:27

### I think the running of the man in front is like the running of Ahimaaz son of Zadok

The watchman compares the way the man ran to the way Ahimaaz runs to suggest that it may be him. Alternate translation: "I think the man running in front is Ahimaaz son Zadok, because he runs like Ahimaaz" (See: [Simile](#))

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> So the watchman said, "I think the running of the man in front is like the running of Ahimaaz [son of Zadok](#)." [The king](#) said, "He is a [good](#) man and is coming with [good](#) news."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [The king](#)
- [good](#)
- [good](#)

## 2 Samuel 18:28

### He bowed himself before the king with his face to the ground

He did this to honor the king. Alternate translation: "He bowed himself before the king with his face to the ground to honor the king" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Blessed be Yahweh

"Praise Yahweh." Here "bless" means to praise.

### the men who lifted up their hand against my master the king

Here Ahimaaz speaks of the men opposing the king as if they were raising their hands before him. Alternate translation: "the men who opposed and fought against my master the king" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Then...called out
- the king
- before the king
- the king
- All is well
- He bowed himself
- to the ground
- Blessed be
- Yahweh
- your God
- their hand

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Then Ahimaaz [called out](#) and said to [the king](#), "[All is well.](#)" He [bowed himself before the king](#) with his face [to the ground](#) and said, "[Blessed be Yahweh your God!](#) He has delivered the men who lifted up [their hand](#) against my master [the king.](#)"

## 2 Samuel 18:29

### a great disturbance

This means that people were acting as though things were not right.

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- Is it well
- with the young man
- s servant
- s servant
- Absalom
- Joab
- I did...know

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> So the king replied, "Is it well with the young man Absalom?" Ahimaaz answered, "When Joab sent me, the king's servant, to you, king, I saw a great disturbance, but I did not know what it was."

## 2 Samuel 18:30

### Turn aside and stand here

“Move out of the way” or “Stand aside”

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Then the king said, “Turn aside and stand here.” So Ahimaaz turned aside, and stood still.

## 2 Samuel 18:31

### rose up against

This means to oppose. Alternate translation: “opposed” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [from](#)

### ULT

**31** Immediately then the Cushite arrived and said, “There is good news for [my master the king](#), for [Yahweh](#) has avenged you today [from](#) all who rose up against you.”

## 2 Samuel 18:32

### The enemies of my master the king,...should be as that young man is

The Cushite uses a comparison as a polite way to tell the king that Absalom is dead. This can be stated more directly. Alternate translation: "I would like all your enemies ... to die the way that young man died" (See: [Simile](#) and [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- with the young man
- Absalom
- The enemies of
- my master

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Then the king said to the Cushite, "Is it well with the young man Absalom?"  
The Cushite answered, "The enemies of my master the king, and all who rise up against you to do harm to you, should be as that young man is."

## 2 Samuel 18:33

### was deeply unnerved

“was very unhappy” or “was trembling with grief”

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the gate
- My...son
- son...my
- son, my
- my son
- my son
- Absalom
- Absalom
- Absalom

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Then **the king** was deeply unnerved, and he went up to the room over **the gate** and wept. As he went he grieved, “My **son Absalom, my son, my son Absalom!** I wish I had died instead of you, **Absalom, my son, my son!**”



## 2 Samuel 19

### 2 Samuel 19 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### David told to stop mourning Absalom

Joab warned David that if he continued to mourn Absalom and not thank his army, they would all desert him. So David went out to encourage the soldiers. David was both a good father and a good leader.

##### David made king again

This chapter records the recognition that David was the true king of Israel. It is important to remember that even though Absalom had power for a while, David never stopped being the king.

##### The ten tribes and Judah argue over David

The ten tribes of Israel argued with the tribe of Judah about who would bring David across the river. The men of Judah answered the ten tribes very harshly. This may foreshadow, or give a glimpse of, the future civil war that would come to divide these two groups.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical questions

The people wanted David back as their king and expressed it in a rhetorical question: "So why are we not talking about bringing the king back?" David also used a question to persuade the people of Judah to bring him back: "You are my brothers, my flesh and bone. Why then are you the last to bring back the king?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## 2 Samuel 19:1

### Joab was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Joab" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Look, the king is weeping

The word "Look" is used here to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen, the king is weeping"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [the king](#)
- [and mourning](#)
- [Absalom](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> [Joab](#) was told, "Look, [the king](#) is weeping [and mourning](#) for [Absalom](#)."

## 2 Samuel 19:2

### So the victory that day was turned into mourning for all the army

This means that the whole army mourned instead of celebrating. AT  
“So instead of celebrating victory that day, the whole army mourned” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the army
- the army
- The king
- his son

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So the victory that day was turned into mourning for all [the army](#), for [the army](#) heard it said that day, “[The king](#) is mourning for [his son](#).”

## 2 Samuel 19:3

### like people who are ashamed sneak away when they run from battle

The author compares the way that the soldiers had to sneak back into the city to the way that soldiers sneak away when they are running away from battle. This emphasizes that they were made to feel ashamed. Alternate translation: "in the same way that people who had run away from battle would sneak away because they were ashamed" (See: [Simile](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> [The soldiers](#) had to sneak quietly into the city that day, like [people](#) who are ashamed sneak away when they run from battle.

### sneak

move without being seen by others

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The soldiers](#)
- [people](#)

## 2 Samuel 19:4

### The king covered his face

This is a way to express grief and mourning. Alternate translation: "The king showed his grief by covering his face" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- The king
- and cried in
- his face
- and cried in
- My son
- my son
- my son
- Absalom
- Absalom

### ULT

**4** The king covered his face and cried in a loud voice, "My son Absalom, Absalom, my son, my son!"

## 2 Samuel 19:5

### You have shamed the faces of all your soldiers today

Here the soldiers are referred to by their face to emphasize how they would have hid their faces because of their shame” Alternate translation: “You have caused all your soldiers to hide their faces in shame today” or “You have caused all of your soldiers to be ashamed today” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [the house](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the faces of](#)
- [your soldiers](#)
- [your life](#)
- [the lives of](#)
- [your sons](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then [Joab](#) entered into [the house](#) to [the king](#) and said to him, “You have shamed [the faces of all your soldiers](#) today, who have saved [your life](#) today, and [the lives of your sons](#) and of your daughters, and the lives of your wives, and the lives of your concubines,

## 2 Samuel 19:6

### nothing to you

This phrase is an exaggeration, but it expresses the very low value that David showed for the army. Alternate translation: "are worth very little to you" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### if Absalom had lived, and we all had died, then that would have pleased you

The speaker is giving a hypothetical situation. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [because you love](#)
- [those who love you](#)
- [commanders](#)
- [and soldiers](#)
- [I believe](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [had lived](#)
- [would have pleased you](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> [because you love](#) those who hate you, and you hate [those who love you](#). For today you have shown that [commanders and soldiers](#) are nothing to you. Today [I believe](#) that if [Absalom had lived](#), and we all had died, then that [would have pleased you](#).

## 2 Samuel 19:7

### I swear by Yahweh

Joab is making a very strong oath. Alternate translation: "I swear, as surely as Yahweh is alive" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### if you do not go, not one man will remain with you

This means that only if David went would his soldiers remain with him. Alternate translation: "only if you go will any of your men remain with you" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### not one man will remain with you

This refers to them remaining loyal to him. Alternate translation: "not one man will remain loyal to you" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and go out](#)
- [do...go](#)
- [kindly](#)
- [your soldiers](#)
- [I swear](#)
- [by Yahweh](#)
- [the disasters](#)

### ULT

7 Now therefore get up [and go out](#) and speak [kindly](#) to [your soldiers](#), for [I swear by Yahweh](#), if you do not [go](#), not one man will remain with you tonight. That would be worse for you than all [the disasters](#) that have ever happened to you from your youth until now."



## 2 Samuel 19:8

### all the people were told

This is a generalization. It means most of the men. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “many of the men who were there heard others saying” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Look, the king is sitting

The word “Look” is used here to draw someone’s attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: “Listen, the king is sitting”

### all the people

Here “the people” refer to the people who followed David. Here “all” is an generalization. It means a large number came and gathered around him. Alternate translation: “many of the people” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### So Israel fled, every man to his home

Here “Israel” refers to the Israelite soldiers who followed Absalom. Alternate translation: “And every Israelite soldier fled to his own home” or “And all of the Israelite soldiers fled to their homes” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [in the city gate](#)
- [in the gate](#)
- [the people](#)
- [the people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So [the king](#) got up and sat [in the city gate](#), and all [the people](#) were told, “Look, [the king](#) is sitting [in the gate](#),” and all [the people](#) came before [the king](#). So Israel fled, every man to his home.

## 2 Samuel 19:9

### out of the hand of our enemies

Here “hand” means control. Alternate translation: “from under the control of our enemies” or “from our enemies’ control” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### out of the hand of the Philistines

Here “hand” means control. Alternate translation: “from under the control of the Philistines” or “from the Philistines’ control” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### out of the land because of Absalom

This means that he had left the country fleeing from Absalom. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “out of the country fleeing from Absalom” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [the tribes of](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [The king](#)
- [out of the hand of](#)
- [out of the hand of \(2\)](#)
- [our enemies](#)
- [saved us](#)
- [the Philistines](#)
- [the land](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> It happened that all [the people](#) were arguing with each other throughout all [the tribes of Israel](#) saying, “[The king](#) rescued us [out of the hand of our enemies](#), and he [saved us out of the hand of the Philistines](#), but now he has run out of [the land](#) because of [Absalom](#).”

## 2 Samuel 19:10

### why do you say nothing about bringing the king back?

This means they should consider bringing David back now that Absalom was dead. The question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "we should be talking about bringing the king back." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the king

This refers to David.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Absalom](#)
- [do...say nothing](#)
- [about bringing...back](#)
- [the king](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> [Absalom](#), whom we anointed over us, has died in battle. So why do you [say nothing about bringing the king back?](#)"

## 2 Samuel 19:11

### sent to Zadok and to Abiathar

This means that David sent a messenger to Zadok and Abiathar.  
Alternate translation: "sent a messenger to Zadok and to Abiathar"  
(See: [Idiom](#))

### Why are you the last to bring the king back ... to bring him back to his palace?

This rhetorical question is asked to rebuke the elders in Judah. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have been the first to favor the king and bring him back to the palace, not the people of the nation of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### since the talk of all Israel favors the king, to bring

The noun "talk" can be expressed with the verb "talk" or "speak." Alternate translation: "since all Israel speaks favorably about the king and desires to bring" or "since what the people of Israel are saying is in the king's favor, to bring" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### to bring the king back to his palace

Here restoring the king's authority to rule is spoken of as bringing him back to his palace. Alternate translation: "to restore the king's authority as king" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [King](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king \(2\)](#)
- [David](#)
- [his palace](#)
- [his palace](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [Abiathar](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [the elders of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [to bring...back](#)

### ULT

11 [King David](#) sent to [Zadok](#) and to [Abiathar the priests](#) saying, "Speak to [the elders of Judah](#) saying, 'Why are you the last to [bring the king back](#) to [his palace](#), since the talk of all [Israel](#) favors [the king](#), to bring him back to [his palace](#)?'"

## 2 Samuel 19:12

### You are my brothers, my flesh and bone

The king uses these two phrases to emphasize that they are closely related. Being or having the same flesh is a metaphor for belonging to the same family or tribe. Alternate translation: "You are my brothers, and we have the same flesh and bone" or "You are my brothers, my close relatives" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> You are [my brothers](#), my flesh and bone. Why then are you the last [to bring back the king?](#)'

### Why then are you the last to bring back the king?

This is the second rhetorical question here and it is also a rebuke for the elders of Judah. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have been the first, not the last, to bring back the king." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my brothers](#)
- [to bring back](#)
- [the king](#)

## 2 Samuel 19:13

### Amasa

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 17:25](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Are you not my flesh and my bone?

David uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that they are related. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are my flesh and my bones." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### my flesh and my bone

Here David speaks of them being related by saying that they have the same flesh and bones. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Samuel 19:12](#). Alternate translation: "my relative" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### God do so to me

This is an idiom that means for God to kill him. Alternate translation: "May God kill me" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [captain of](#)
- [Joab](#)

#### ULT

**13** Then say to Amasa, 'Are you not my flesh and my bone? [God](#) do so to me, and more also, if you are not [captain of](#) my army from now on in the place of [Joab](#).'

## 2 Samuel 19:14

### he won the hearts

Here the mens' loyalty is referred to as their "hearts." Alternate translation: "he won the loyalty" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### as one man

This speaks of the men being united in their loyalty to the king as if they were one man with the same mind. Alternate translation: "and they were united together" or "they were united in their loyalty to the king" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### They sent to the king

This means that they sent a messenger to the king. Alternate translation: "They sent a messenger to the king" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the hearts of
- of Judah
- the king
- Return
- your men

#### ULT

**14** So he won [the hearts of](#) all the men [of Judah](#) as one man. They sent to [the king](#) saying, "[Return](#), you and all [your men](#)."

## 2 Samuel 19:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- So...returned
- the king
- the king (2)
- the king
- the Jordan
- the Jordan
- Now the men of Judah
- Gilgal

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> So the king returned and came to the Jordan. Now the men of Judah came to Gilgal to go to meet the king and then to bring the king across the Jordan.



## 2 Samuel 19:16

### Gera

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Bahurim

Translate the name of this place the same as you did in [2 Samuel 3:16](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)
- [the Benjamite](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [King](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

**16** Shimei [son of Gera](#), [the Benjamite](#), who was from Bahurim, hurried down with the men of [Judah](#) to meet [King David](#).

## 2 Samuel 19:17

### Ziba

This is the name of a man. Translate as you did in [2 Samuel 9:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### one thousand men ... fifteen sons ... twenty servants

“1,000 men...15 sons...20 servants” (See: [Numbers](#))

### in the presence of the king

This means that the king was there and was aware of what was happening. Alternate translation: “at the place where the king was” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [from Benjamin](#)
- [the servant of](#)
- [servants](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [his...sons](#)
- [the Jordan](#)
- [the king](#)

### ULT

**17** There were 1000 men [from Benjamin](#) with him, and Ziba [the servant of Saul](#), and [his 15 sons](#) and 20 [servants](#) with him. They crossed through [the Jordan](#) in the presence of [the king](#).

## 2 Samuel 19:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- They crossed
- the king
- the king (2)
- s family
- good
- son of
- the Jordan

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> They crossed to bring over the king's family and to do whatever he thought good. Shimei son of Gera bowed down before the king just before he began to cross the Jordan.

## 2 Samuel 19:19

### call to mind

This means “to remember.” Alternate translation: “remember” (See: [Idiom](#))

### your servant

Here Shimei refers to himself this way to humble himself before the king and honor the king.

### not take it to heart

“To take something to heart” means to think about something seriously or to be bothered by it. Alternate translation: “not be bothered by it” or “forget about it” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#) (2)
- [my master](#)
- [my master](#)
- [heart](#)
- [guilty](#)
- [the wrong](#)
- [your servant did](#)
- [left](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

**19** Shimei said to [the king](#), “Do not, [my master](#), find me [guilty](#) or remember [the wrong your servant did](#) the day [my master the king left Jerusalem](#). Please, may [the king](#) not take it to [heart](#).”

## 2 Samuel 19:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- your servant
- knows
- have sinned
- the family of
- Joseph
- my master
- the king

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> For your servant knows that I have sinned. See, that is why I have come today as the first from all the family of Joseph to come down to meet my master the king."

## 2 Samuel 19:21

### Abishai

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 2:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Zeruiah

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 2:13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But Abishai son of Zeruiah answered and said, "Should not Shimei be put to death for this, because he cursed Yahweh's anointed?"

## Should not Shimei be put to death for this, because he cursed Yahweh's anointed?

Abishai was angry at Shimei for cursing David and is suggesting that he should be killed. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Shimei should be put to death because he cursed Yahweh's anointed." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Yahweh's anointed

This refers to David. It means that he is the man that Yahweh had anointed as king. Alternate translation: "the man that Yahweh has anointed as king" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- Yahweh

## 2 Samuel 19:22

### What have I to do with you ... that you should today be adversaries to me?

David uses this rhetorical question to rebuke Abishai. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We have nothing in common with you, you sons of Zeruiah! You have no good reason to become my adversaries today." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then David said, "What have I to do with you, [you sons of](#) Zeruiah, that you should today be adversaries to me? Will any man be put to death today [in Israel](#)? For [do I](#) not [know](#) that today I am [king](#) over [Israel](#)?"

### Will any man be put to death today in Israel? For do I not know that today I am king over Israel?

David uses these rhetorical questions to continue rebuking Abishai. These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "No person will be executed today in the nation of Israel, because today I am the one who is king over all of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Will any man be put to death

This phrase "put to death" means to be killed or executed. Alternate translation: "Will any man be killed" or "Will I order any man to die" (See: [Idiom](#))

### For do I not know that today I am king over Israel?

Possible meanings of this rhetorical question are: (1) "I know that I am still king of Israel." or (2) "Today I am the one who is king over Israel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [you sons of](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [do I...know](#)
- [king](#)

## 2 Samuel 19:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- So...promised...with an oath

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> So the king said to Shimei, "You will not die." So the king promised him with an oath.



## 2 Samuel 19:24

### Mephibosheth

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 4:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### He had not dressed his feet

"He had not cared for his feet." Mephibosheth's feet were crippled. This phrase means that he had not taken proper care of his feet.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [left](#)

### ULT

**24** Then Mephibosheth [son of Saul](#) came down to meet [the king](#). He had not dressed his feet, or trimmed his beard, or washed his clothes from the day [the king left](#) until the day he came home in peace.

## 2 Samuel 19:25

### Why did you not go with me, Mephibosheth?

David is asking Mephibosheth why he did not go with David when David and all the people who followed him left Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "Why did you not go with me when I left Jerusalem, Mephibosheth?" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [did you...go](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> So when he came from [Jerusalem](#) to meet [the king](#), [the king](#) said to him, "Why [did you](#) not [go](#) with me, Mephibosheth?"

## 2 Samuel 19:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- My master
- the king
- the king
- my servant
- I
- your servant is
- a donkey
- so I may ride

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> He answered, “My master the king, my servant deceived me, for I said, ‘I will saddle a donkey so I may ride on it and go with the king.’ For your servant is lame.”

## 2 Samuel 19:27

### Ziba

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 9:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### my master the king is like an angel of God

Here David's wisdom is compared to the wisdom of an angel.

Alternate translation: "my master the king is as wise as an angel of God" (See: [Simile](#))

### do what is good in your eyes

This means to do what you think is right. Alternate translation: "do what you believe to be the right thing to do" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [God](#)
- [what is good](#)

### ULT

**27** My servant Ziba has slandered me, your servant, to [my master the king](#). But my master [the king](#) is like an angel of [God](#). Therefore, do [what is good](#) in your eyes.

## 2 Samuel 19:28

### all my father's house were dead men before my master the king

Mephibosheth speaks of how his relatives had deserved to be executed as if they had already been executed and were dead. Alternate translation: "all my father's house deserved for my master the king to order them to be executed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### my father's house

This refers to his father's relatives. Alternate translation: "my father's relatives" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### What right therefore have I that I should still cry any more to the king?

Mephibosheth uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he has no right to request anything from the king. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Therefore, I have no right to ask the king to do anything else for me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my father](#)
- [s house](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [your servant](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> For all [my father's house](#) were dead men before my master [the king](#), but you set [your servant](#) among those who ate at your own table. What right therefore have I that I should still cry any more to [the king](#)?"

## 2 Samuel 19:29

### Why explain anything further?

David uses this rhetorical question to tell him that he does not need to continue talking about his conflict with Ziba. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You do not need to explain this any further." or "You certainly do not need to say any more." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Then [the king](#) said to him, "Why explain anything further? I have decided that you and Ziba will divide the fields."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)

## 2 Samuel 19:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- my master
- his own home

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> So Mephibosheth replied to the king, "Yes, let him take it all, since my master the king has come safely to his own home."

## 2 Samuel 19:31

### Barzillai

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 17:27](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Gileadite

See how you translated the name of this people group in [2 Samuel 17:27](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Rogelim

See how you translated the name of this place in [2 Samuel 17:27](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the Jordan

the Jordan River

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Gileadite](#)
- [to cross over](#)
- [the Jordan](#)
- [the Jordan](#)
- [with the king](#)

### ULT

**31** Then Barzillai [the Gileadite](#) came down from Rogelim [to cross over the Jordan with the king](#), and he accompanied the king over [the Jordan](#).



## 2 Samuel 19:32

### Mahanaim

See how you translated the name of this place in [2 Samuel 17:27](#).  
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### eighty years old

“80 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

### had furnished the king with provisions

“had provided what the king needed”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [80 years old](#)
- [the king](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Now Barzillai was a very old man, [80 years old](#). He had provided [the king](#) with provisions while he stayed at Mahanaim, for he was a very wealthy man.

## 2 Samuel 19:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> [The king](#) said to Barzillai, “Come over with me, and I will provide for you to stay with me [in Jerusalem](#).”

## 2 Samuel 19:34

**How many days are left in the years of my life, that I should go up with the king to Jerusalem?**

Here Barzillai means that he is old and that there is no reason for him to accompany David. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am certainly not going to live many more years. There is no good reason for me to go up with the king to Jerusalem." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Barzillai replied to [the king](#), "How many days are left in the years of my life, that I should go up with [the king to Jerusalem](#)?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)

## 2 Samuel 19:35

### eighty years old

“80 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Can I distinguish between good and bad?

Barzillai uses rhetorical questions to emphasize why he does not want to go to Jerusalem. Here “good” and “bad” refer to what is desirable and what is not. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “I cannot distinguish between what is desirable and what is not.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> I am eighty years old. Can I distinguish between good and bad? Can your servant taste what I eat or what I drink? Can I hear any more the voice of singing men and singing women? Why then should your servant be a burden to my master the king?

### Can your servant taste what I eat or what I drink?

Barzillai uses rhetorical questions to emphasize why he does not want to go to Jerusalem. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “I cannot enjoy the taste of what I eat and drink.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Can I hear any more the voice of singing men and singing women?

Barzillai uses rhetorical questions to emphasize why he does not want to go to Jerusalem. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “I cannot hear well the voices of singing men and singing women.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Why then should your servant be a burden to my master the king?

Barzillai uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he does not want to be a burden to the king. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “Your servant should not go with you and be a burden to you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I am
- eighty years old
- good
- your servant
- your servant
- I eat
- the voice
- my master
- the king

## 2 Samuel 19:36

### Why should the king repay me with such a reward?

Barzillai uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he does not know why the king would reward him this way. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I do not know why the king would repay me with such a great reward" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Your servant would like to just go over the Jordan with the king. Why should the king repay me with such a reward?

### Translation Words - ULT

- Your servant
- the Jordan
- the king
- the king

## 2 Samuel 19:37

### General Information:

Barzillai asks that Kimham be allowed to take his place instead with David.

### Kimham

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### by the grave of my father and my mother

This does not mean that he wants to die right next to their graves, but rather, that he wants to die in the city where they are buried. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “where my father’s and my mother’s graves are” or “where my father and my mother are buried” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Let him cross over

This refers to crossing the Jordan River. Alternate translation: “Let him cross over the Jordan” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your servant](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [let...return back home](#)
- [so I may die](#)
- [the grave of](#)
- [my father](#)
- [my master](#)
- [the king](#)
- [good](#)

### ULT

**37** Please let [your servant return back home, so I may die](#) in my own city by [the grave of my father](#) and my mother. But see, here is [your servant](#) Kimham. Let him cross over with [my master the king](#), and do for him what seems [good](#) to you.”

## 2 Samuel 19:38

### Kimham will go over with me

This refers to crossing the Jordan River. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Kimham will cross the river with me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)
- [good](#)

### ULT

**38** [The king](#) answered, "Kimham will go over with me, and I will do for him what seems [good](#) to you, and whatever you desire from me, I will do that for you."

## 2 Samuel 19:39

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- Then...crossed
- the Jordan
- and the king
- the king
- and blessed him
- Then Barzillai returned

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> Then all the people crossed the Jordan, and the king crossed over, and the king kissed Barzillai and blessed him. Then Barzillai returned to his own home.



## 2 Samuel 19:40

### crossed over to Gilgal

They crossed over the Jordan River. Alternate translation: “crossed over the river to Gilgal” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Kimham

See how you translated this name in [2 Samuel 19:37](#).

### All the army of Judah brought the king over, and also half the army of Israel

“All the army of Judah and half the army of Israel brought the king over”

### brought the king over

They crossed over the Jordan River with the king. Alternate translation: “escorted the king over the river” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- So...crossed over
- brought...over
- the king
- the king
- Israel
- to Gilgal
- the army of
- the army of
- Judah

### ULT

**40** So the king crossed over to Gilgal, and Kimham crossed over with him. All the army of Judah brought the king over, and also half the army of Israel.

## 2 Samuel 19:41

### Why have our brothers, the men of Judah ... and all David's men with him?

The men of Israel use this question to express that they feel betrayed by the people of Judah. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is not right that our brothers, the men of Judah, who did not support you as king, had the privilege of bringing you and your family back across the Jordan River." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>41</sup> Soon all the men of [Israel](#) began to come to [the king](#) and say to [the king](#), "Why have [our brothers](#), the men of [Judah](#), stolen you away [and brought the king](#) and [his family over the Jordan](#), and all [David's men with him](#)?"

### stolen you away

The men of Israel speak of how the men of Judah escorted the king across the river as if the king were something they stole that did not belong to them. Alternate translation: "taken you away from us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the Jordan

the Jordan River

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [David](#)
- [our brothers](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and brought...over](#)
- [his family](#)
- [the Jordan](#)

## 2 Samuel 19:42

### Why then are you angry about this?

The men of Judah ask this rhetorical question to rebuke the men of Israel. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "But you have no reason to be upset about this." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Have we eaten anything that the king had to pay for? Has he given us any gifts?

The men of Judah ask the question to express that they have not taken anything from the king. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "The king has never paid for our food, and he has never given us any gifts." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> So the men of [Judah](#) answered the men of [Israel](#), "It is because [the king is](#) more closely related to us. Why then are you angry about this? Have we eaten [anything](#) that [the king](#) had to pay for? Has he given us any gifts?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the king is](#)
- [the king](#)
- [anything](#)

## 2 Samuel 19:43

### we have even more right to David than you

“we have a greater claim to David than you do.” It may be helpful to state clearly what having “more right” means. Alternate translation: “we have more right to serve the king and to be with the king than you do” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Why then did you despise us?

The men of Israel ask this rhetorical question to express their anger. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “You should not have despised us!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> The men of [Israel](#) answered the men of [Judah](#), “We have ten [tribes related to the king](#), so we have even more right to David than you. Why then did you despise us? Was not our proposal [to bring back our king](#) the first to be heard?” But the words of the men of [Judah](#) were even more harsh than the words of the men of [Israel](#).

### Was not our proposal to bring back our king the first to be heard?

The men of Israel ask this question to remind and rebuke the people of Judah. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “We were the first to suggest that we bring back the king!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the words of the men of Judah were even more harsh than the words of the men of Israel

“the men of Judah spoke even more harshly than the men of Israel did”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [tribes](#)
- [related to the king](#)
- [our king](#)
- [to bring back](#)

## 2 Samuel 20

### 2 Samuel 20 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Sheba's revolt

A man named Sheba told the people of the ten tribes that David was Judah's king, but not their king. David worked hard to preserve unity in Israel after this time of division.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Idiom

Joab used an idiom "has lifted up his hand against the king, against David" meaning "revolted against David," to explain why his army was attacking the city of Abie. (See: [Idiom](#))

## 2 Samuel 20:1

### to be at the same place

This refers to the town of Gilgal.

### Sheba ... Bikri

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### We have no part in David, neither have we any inheritance in the son of Jesse

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Sheba is emphasizing that he and the tribes of Israel have no relationship with David. Alternate translation: "The inheritance of David and his father's family does not belong to us" or "We are not a part of David and his father's family" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> There also happened to be at the same place a troublemaker whose name was Sheba [son of Bikri](#), a Benjamite. He blew [the trumpet](#) and said, "We have no part in David, neither have we [any inheritance in the son of Jesse](#). Let every man go back to his home, [Israel](#)."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)
- [in the son of](#)
- [the trumpet](#)
- [any inheritance](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [Israel](#)

## 2 Samuel 20:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- David
- son of
- Judah
- their king
- the Jordan
- Jerusalem

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So all the men of Israel deserted David and followed Sheba son of Bikri. But the men of Judah followed closely their king, from the Jordan all the way to Jerusalem.

## 2 Samuel 20:3

### to keep the palace

Here the phrase “to keep” means to take care of. Alternate translation: “to take care of the palace” (See: [Idiom](#))

### in a house under guard

If a house is “under guard” it means that a guard is posted at the house. Alternate translation: “in a house and put a guard there” (See: [Idiom](#))

### he did not lie with them

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “he did not have sexual relations with them” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### they were shut up

This means that they were not allowed to leave the house. Alternate translation: “they were shut inside the house” (See: [Idiom](#))

### widows

These are women whose husbands have died.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [his palace in Jerusalem](#)
- [the palace](#)
- [a house](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [he](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> When [David](#) came to [his palace in Jerusalem](#), [he](#) took the ten concubines whom he had left to keep [the palace](#), and he put them in [a house](#) under guard. He provided for their needs, but he did not lie with them any longer. So they were shut up to the day of their death, living as if they were widows.



## 2 Samuel 20:4

### Amasa

This is the commander of David's army. See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 17:25](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [must be](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then [the king](#) said to Amasa, "Call the men of [Judah](#) together within three days; you [must be](#) here, too."

## 2 Samuel 20:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Judah

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So Amasa went to call Judah, but he was delayed beyond the time that the king had allotted for him.

## 2 Samuel 20:6

### Abishai

This is another commander of David's army. See how you translated his name in [2 Samuel 2:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### do us more harm

"hurt us more"

### your master's servants, my soldiers

The phrase "my soldiers" clarifies which "servants." David refers to himself as "your master" as a formal way of speaking to someone with less authority.

### pursue after

"chase after"

### he will find fortified cities

This means that Sheba and his men will enter these cities to hide from David's army. The word "he" represents Sheba but refers to both him and his men. Alternate translation: "he and his men will hide in fortified cities" or "he and his men will take refuge in fortified cities" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### out of our sight

Here David refers to his army by their sight to emphasize that Sheba and his men would be hidden and David's army would be unable to capture them. Alternate translation: "from us" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [son of](#)
- [Absalom did](#)
- [your master](#)
- [s servants, my soldiers](#)
- [and escape out of](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So [David](#) said to Abishai, "Now Sheba son of Bikri will do us more harm than [Absalom did](#). Take [your master's servants, my soldiers](#), and pursue after him, or he will find fortified cities [and escape out of](#) our sight."

## 2 Samuel 20:7

### Kerethites ... Pelethites

These are the names of people groups who helped to protect King David. See how you translated this man's name in [2 Samuel 8:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- Then...went out
- They left
- along with the Kerethites
- the mighty warriors
- Jerusalem
- son of

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then Joab's men went out after him, along with the Kerethites and the Pelethites and all the mighty warriors. They left Jerusalem to pursue Sheba son of Bikri.

## 2 Samuel 20:8

### When they were

“When Joab and the men of Judah were”

### belt

a strip of leather or other material used to hold clothing or weapons in place

### sheathed sword

This means the sword was in its protective covering.

### the sword fell out

Joab let the sword fall out to fool Amasa into thinking that he Joab was unarmed, so that Amasa would allow him to walk closer to him. Alternate translation: “he allowed the sword to fall on the ground so Amasa would think he was unarmed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [was wearing](#)
- [that he had put](#)
- [a...sword fastened to it](#)
- [walked forward](#)
- [the sword fell out](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> When they were at the great stone which is at Gibeon, Amasa came to meet them. [Joab was wearing](#) the battle armor [that he had put](#) on, which included a belt around his waist with a sheathed [sword fastened to it](#). As he [walked forward](#), [the sword fell out](#).

## 2 Samuel 20:9

### my cousin

Amasa was the son of the sister of Joab's mother.

### took Amasa by the beard with his right hand to kiss him

This was a common way for men to greet one another.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- Joab
- my cousin
- with his...hand

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So Joab said to Amasa, "Is it well with you, my cousin?" Joab took Amasa by the beard with his right hand to kiss him.

## 2 Samuel 20:10

### dagger

a short sword that is easy to hide and was often used for close-in fighting and assassinations

### bowels spilled

“intestines spilled”

### Translation Words - ULT

- did...notice
- the dagger
- Joab
- So Joab
- in...s left hand
- the ground
- and Amasa died
- his brother
- pursued
- son of

### ULT

**10** Amasa did not **notice the dagger** that was in **Joab's left hand**. Joab stabbed Amasa in the stomach and his bowels spilled out to **the ground**. Joab did not strike him again, **and Amasa died**. **So Joab** and Abishai **his brother** pursued Sheba **son of** Bikri.

## 2 Samuel 20:11

### he who is for David

To be “for” someone means to support them. Alternate translation: “he who supports David” or “he who is loyal to David” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [stood](#)
- [favors](#)

### ULT

**11** Then one of [Joab](#)’s men [stood](#) by Amasa, and the man said, “He who [favors Joab](#), and he who is for David, let him follow [Joab](#).”



## 2 Samuel 20:12

### Amasa lay wallowing in his blood

“Amasa lay squirming in his blood.” Amasa may have still been alive and rolling in his blood, but he was probably dead by this time. It is described this way to show how gruesome his body looked.

Alternate translation: “Amasa lay dead in his blood” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### all the people stood still ... came by him stood still

This means they stopped walking and were staring at Amasa’s dead body. Alternate translation: “all the people stood still staring at the dead body ... came by him stood still, staring at his dead body” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### he carried Amasa

“he carried Amasa’s body”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [stood still](#)

### ULT

**12** Amasa lay wallowing in his blood in the middle of the road. When the man saw that all [the people stood still](#), he carried Amasa off of the road and into a field. He threw a garment over him because he saw that everyone who came by him stood still.

## 2 Samuel 20:13

### After Amasa was taken off the road

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After the man took Amasa off the road" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### in pursuit of

This abstract noun can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "pursuing" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [son of](#)

#### ULT

**13** After Amasa was taken off the road, all the men followed on after [Joab](#) in pursuit of Sheba [son of Bikri](#).

## 2 Samuel 20:14

### Sheba passed through

Here “Sheba” refers to both him and his army. Alternate translation: “Sheba and his army” or “Sheba and his men” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Abel Beth Maacah

Both Abel and Beth Maacah names refer to the same place and may be combined. It is a city near the tribe of Dan. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### of the Bikrites

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### also pursued Sheba

“also followed Sheba”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Sheba passed through](#)
- [the tribes of](#)
- [Israel](#)

#### ULT

**14** [Sheba passed through](#) all [the tribes of Israel](#) to Abel Beth Maacah, and through all the land of the Bikrites, who gathered together and also pursued Sheba.

## 2 Samuel 20:15

### They caught up with him

“Joab and the soldiers caught up with him”

### against the city against the wall

“against the city wall”

### battered the wall to knock it down

This means that they used a battering ram to knock down the wall. A battering ram was a cut tree or large log with a sharpened end or an end covered in metal. It was held by several men who would pound the end against a wall. Alternate translation: “used a battering ram to knock down the wall” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the army](#)
- [Joab](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> They caught up with him and besieged him in Abel Beth Maacah. They built up a siege ramp against the city against the wall. All [the army](#) who were with [Joab](#) battered the wall to knock it down.

## 2 Samuel 20:16

### Listen, please listen

The repetition of “Listen” strengthens the woman’s plea.

### Translation Words - ULT

- wise
- Then...cried
- Joab

### ULT

**16** Then a wise woman cried out of the city, “Listen, please listen, Joab! Come near me so I may speak with you.”

## 2 Samuel 20:17

### Listen to the words of your servant

The woman refers to herself as “your servant.” This is a polite way to speak to someone with greater authority.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- your servant
- I am

### ULT

**17** So Joab came near to her, and the woman said, “Are you **Joab**?” He answered, “I am.” Then she said to him, “Listen to the words of **your servant**.” He answered, “**I am** listening.”

## 2 Samuel 20:18

### that advice would end the matter

“that advice would solve the problem”

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Then she spoke, “They used to say in old times, ‘Surely seek advice at Abel,’ and that advice would end the matter.”

## 2 Samuel 20:19

### most peaceful and faithful in Israel

This describes the cities. Alternate translation: “most peaceful and faithful cities in Israel” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### city that is a mother in Israel

This speaks of the importance of this city among the nation of Israel as if it were a well respected mother. Alternate translation: “city that everyone in Israel respects like they would their mother” or “city that is very important and that Israel respects” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

**19** We are a city that is one of the most peaceful and faithful in Israel. You are trying to destroy a city that is a mother in Israel. Why do you want to swallow up the inheritance of Yahweh?”

### Why do you want to swallow up the inheritance of Yahweh?

Here the woman uses a rhetorical question to suggest to Joab what they should not do. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “You should not destroy the city that is Yahweh’s inheritance!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### swallow up

Here the woman speaks of the army destroying the city as if the city were food to be swallowed. Alternate translation: “destroy” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the inheritance of Yahweh

Here the city is referred to as Yahweh’s inheritance to emphasize that it belongs to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “a city that belongs to Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- We are a city that
- and faithful
- in Israel
- in Israel
- are trying
- to destroy
- the inheritance of
- Yahweh



## 2 Samuel 20:20

### Far be it, far be it from me, that I should

He repeats this phrase to emphasize that this is something he would never do. Alternate translation: "Truly, truly, I would never" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> So [Joab](#) answered and said, "Far be it, far be it from me, that I should swallow up or destroy."

### that I should swallow up or destroy

This refers to destroying the city. This may be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "that I should swallow up or destroy your city" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### swallow up or destroy

Both of these phrases means to destroy. In the first phrase "destroying" is spoken of as if it were "swallowing." These may be combined. Alternate translation: "ruin or destroy the city" or "destroy" (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)

## 2 Samuel 20:21

### has lifted up his hand against

This means to rebel and fight against someone. Alternate translation: “has opposed” or “is rebelling against” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Give up him alone

Joab is asking for the people of the city to release Sheba to him. Alternate translation: “Hand this man over to us” or “Give this man to us” (See: [Idiom](#))

### I will withdraw from the city

Here the “I” refers to both Joab and his soldiers. Alternate translation: “We will withdraw from the city” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### His head will be thrown

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “We will throw his head” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Ephraim](#)
- [named](#)
- [son of](#)
- [his hand](#)
- [against the king](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [His head](#)

### ULT

**21** That is not true. But a man from the hill country of [Ephraim](#), named Sheba son of Bikri, has lifted up [his hand against the king](#), against David. Give up him alone, and I will withdraw from the city.” The woman said to [Joab](#), “[His head](#) will be thrown to you over the wall.”

## 2 Samuel 20:22

### Then the woman went to all the people in her wisdom

This means that the woman acted wisely and spoke to her people about what they should do. Alternate translation: "Then the wise woman spoke to all the people" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### every man to his home

"every man went to his own home"

### Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- They cut off
- the head of
- son of
- Joab
- Then Joab
- the trumpet
- returned to
- Jerusalem
- the king

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then the woman went to all the people in her wisdom. They cut off the head of Sheba son of Bikri, and threw it out to Joab. Then he blew the trumpet and Joab's men left the city, every man to his home. Then Joab returned to Jerusalem to the king.

## 2 Samuel 20:23

### Now

“Now” marks a break in the main story line. This new section gives background information about the men who served King David. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Joab was over ... Benaiah son of Jehoiada was over

The phrase “was over” refers to having authority over a group of people. Alternate translation: “Joab had authority over ... Benaiah son of Jehoiada had authority over” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Benaiah ... Jehoiada

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [2 Samuel 8:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Kerethites ... Pelethites

Translate the names of these people groups the same as you did in [2 Samuel 8:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Now Joab was](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and Benaiah...was](#)
- [son of](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [the Kerethites](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> [Now Joab was](#) over all the army of [Israel](#), and [Benaiah son of Jehoiada was](#) over [the Kerethites](#) and over the [Pelethites](#).

## 2 Samuel 20:24

### Adoniram was over

The phrase “was over” refers to having authority over a group of people. Alternate translation: “Adoniram had authority over” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Adoniram

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the men who did forced labor

“the slave workers”

### Jehoshaphat ... Ahilud

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [2 Samuel 8:16](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and Jehoshaphat...was](#)
- [son of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Adoniram was over the men who did forced labor, [and Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud](#) [was](#) the recorder.

## 2 Samuel 20:25

### Sheva

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- and Zadok
- and Abiathar were
- priests

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Sheva was scribe and Zadok and Abiathar were priests.

## 2 Samuel 20:26

### Ira

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Jairite

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [chief minister](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Ira the Jairite was [chief minister](#) to David.

## 2 Samuel 21

### 2 Samuel 21 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Famine caused by a broken oath

When Israel first conquered the land, they promised not to kill the people of Gibeon. When Saul tried to kill them all, God caused a famine in Israel. David made amends with the people of Gibeon and the famine ended. David also kept his vow to Jonathan's sons. This helps to show the wisdom of king David. Although these people were not Israelites, they believed in Yahweh. (See: [promise, promised, vow](#) and [wise, wisdom](#) and [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#))

##### Wisdom, grace and justice

David is seen to have many great qualities in this chapter. These were qualities important for a king of Israel: wisdom, grace and justice. (See: [wise, wisdom](#) and [grace, gracious](#) and [just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification](#))



## 2 Samuel 21:1

### sought the face of Yahweh

Here “face” is a synecdoche for Yahweh’s presence. This means David prayed to Yahweh for an answer about the famine. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### because of Saul and his murderous family

Saul had killed many Gibeonites, and Saul’s descendants are guilty because of this sin.

### Translation Words - ULT

- a famine
- David
- David
- the Gibeonites
- and...sought
- the face of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Saul
- his...family

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> There was a famine in David’s time for three years in a row, and David sought the face of Yahweh. So Yahweh said, “This famine is on you because of Saul and his murderous family, because he put the Gibeonites to death.”

## 2 Samuel 21:2

### Now

Here “Now” marks a break in the main story line. This gives background information about the Gibeonites. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- So...called
- the king
- Saul
- and Judah
- from the people of
- The people of
- the people of
- Israel
- Israel
- Israel
- the Amorites
- had sworn not to kill
- but...tried

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So the king called together the Gibeonites and spoke to them. Now the Gibeonites were not from the people of Israel; they were from what remained of the Amorites. The people of Israel had sworn not to kill them, but Saul tried to kill them all anyway in his zeal for the people of Israel and Judah.

## 2 Samuel 21:3

### What should I do for you? How can I make atonement ... promises?

These two sentences have similar meanings. Alternate translation: "What can I do to remove this sin, so that you may bless the people of Yahweh, who inherit his goodness and promises?" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [the Gibeonites](#)
- [so that you may bless](#)
- [the people of...who are his inheritance](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> So [David](#) said to [the Gibeonites](#), "What should I do for you? How can I make atonement, [so that you may bless the people of Yahweh, who are his inheritance?](#)"

## 2 Samuel 21:4

### It is not a matter of silver or gold

“Money will not solve the problem”

### Translation Words - ULT

- The Gibeonites
- of silver
- or gold
- Saul
- his family
- to put to death
- in Israel

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The Gibeonites responded to him, “It is not a matter of silver or gold between us and Saul or his family. In the same way it is not for us to put to death any man in Israel.” David replied, “What are you saying that I should do for you?”

## 2 Samuel 21:5

### who schemed against us

“who made plans against us”

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- tried to kill us all
- Israel

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> They answered [the king](#), “The man who [tried to kill us all](#), who schemed against us, so that we are now destroyed and have no place within the borders of [Israel](#)—

## 2 Samuel 21:6

### let seven men from his descendants be handed over to us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “allow your men to give seven of his descendants to us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### we will hang them

“we will execute them by hanging”

### in Gibeah of Saul

Saul was from the town of Gibeah.

### the one chosen by Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the one whom Yahweh chose” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [from his descendants](#)
- [before Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [the king](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> let seven men [from his descendants](#) be handed over to us, and we will hang them [before Yahweh](#) in Gibeah of [Saul](#), the one chosen by [Yahweh](#).” So [the king](#) said, “I will give them to you.”

## 2 Samuel 21:7

### Mephibosheth

Mephibosheth was the son of Jonathan. See how you translated his name in [2 Samuel 4:4](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- son of
- son of (2)
- son of (3)
- Saul
- Saul
- Yahweh
- s oath
- David

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But [the king](#) spared Mephibosheth [son of Jonathan](#) [son of Saul](#), because of [Yahweh's oath](#) between them, between [David](#) and Jonathan [son of Saul](#).

## 2 Samuel 21:8

### Rizpah ... Aiah

Rizpah was a woman and her father was Aiah. See how you translated these names in [2 Samuel 3:7](#).

### Armoni and Mephibosheth ... Adriel ... Barzillai

These are names of men. This is not the same Mephibosheth as the son of Jonathan. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Merab

This is the name of a woman. See how you translated it in [2 Samuel 3:13](#).

### Meholathite

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the...sons of](#)
- [the...sons of](#)
- [son of](#)
- [to Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But [the king](#) took the two [sons of](#) Rizpah daughter of Aiah, sons whom she bore [to Saul](#)—the two sons were named Armoni and Mephibosheth; and David also took the five [sons of](#) Merab <sup>[1]</sup> daughter of [Saul](#), whom she bore to Adriel [son of](#) Barzillai the Meholathite.



## 2 Samuel 21:9

### He handed them over into the hands of the Gibeonites

Here “the hands of the Gibeonites” represents the Gibeonite people’s control. Alternate translation: “He gave them to the Gibeonites” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### They were put to death

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “The Gibeonites put them to death” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [into the hands of](#)
- [the Gibeonites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and they died all](#)
- [harvest](#)
- [harvest](#)
- [barley](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> He handed them over [into the hands of the Gibeonites](#). They hanged them on the mountain before [Yahweh](#), [and they died all](#) seven together. They were put to death during the time of [harvest](#), during the first days at the beginning of [barley harvest](#).

## 2 Samuel 21:10

### Rizpah ... Aiah

Rizpah was a woman and her father was Aiah. See how you translated these names in [2 Samuel 3:7](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [harvest](#)
- [the sky](#)
- [the sky](#)

### ULT

**10** Then Rizpah, the daughter of Aiah, took sackcloth and spread it for herself on the mountain beside the dead bodies, from the beginning of [harvest](#) until the rain poured down on them from [the sky](#). She did not allow the birds of [the sky](#) to disturb the bodies by day or the wild animals by night.

## 2 Samuel 21:11

### It was told to David

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told David" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)

### ULT

**11** It was told to David what Rizpah, the daughter of Aiah, the concubine of [Saul](#), had done.

## 2 Samuel 21:12

### Jabesh Gilead

Jabesh is a town in the region of Gilead. See how you translated this in [2 Samuel 2:4](#).

### the public square

This is an area near the city gate where people did various kinds of business.

### Beth Shan

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Gilboa

See how you translated the name of this place in [2 Samuel 1:6](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [his son](#)
- [the men of](#)
- [had hanged them](#)
- [the Philistines](#)

### ULT

**12** So [David](#) went and took the bones of [Saul](#) and the bones of Jonathan [his son](#) from [the men of](#) Jabesh Gilead, who had stolen them from the public square of Beth Shan, where the Philistines [had hanged them](#), after [the Philistines](#) had killed [Saul](#) in Gilboa.

## 2 Samuel 21:13

### who had been hanged

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom the Gibeonites executed by hanging” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [his son](#)

### ULT

**13** David took away from there the bones of [Saul](#) and the bones of Jonathan [his son](#), and they gathered the bones of the seven men who had been hanged, as well.

## 2 Samuel 21:14

### Zela

This is the name of a town in Benjamin. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Kish

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### his father

“Saul’s father”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [his son](#)
- [of Benjamin](#)
- [his father](#)
- [the king](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

**14** They buried the bones of [Saul](#) and Jonathan [his son](#) in the country of [Benjamin](#) in Zela, in the tomb of Kish [his father](#). They performed all that [the king commanded](#). After that [God](#) answered their prayers for the land.

## 2 Samuel 21:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- David
- David
- his army
- the Philistines

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Then the Philistines went to war again with Israel. So David went down with his army and fought against the Philistines. David was overcome with battle fatigue.

## 2 Samuel 21:16

### Ishbi-Benob

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### three hundred shekels

“300 shekels.” This is about 3.4 kilograms. (See: [Biblical Weight and Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)
- [was armed](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

**16** Ishbi-Benob, a descendant of the giants, whose [bronze](#) spear weighed 300 shekels, and who [was armed](#) with a new sword, intended to kill [David](#).



## 2 Samuel 21:17

### Abishai son of Zeruiah

Abishai and Zeruiah are names of men. See how you translated these names in [2 Samuel 2:18](#).

### you do not put out the lamp of Israel

The “lamp of Israel” is a metaphor that refers to David’s leadership and the idea that if David were to die, the people of Israel would have no clear direction. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)
- [and killed him](#)
- [David](#)
- [swore](#)
- [You must...go](#)
- [Israel](#)

### ULT

**17** But Abishai [son of](#) Zeruiah rescued David, attacked the Philistine, [and killed him](#). Then the men of [David swore](#) to him, saying, “[You must not go](#) to battle anymore with us, so that you do not put out the lamp of [Israel](#).”

## 2 Samuel 21:18

### It came about after this that

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### Gob

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Sibbekai ... Saph

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Hushathite ... Rephaim

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Rephaim

This people group was known for its giant warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)

### ULT

**18** It came about after this that there was again a battle with [the Philistines](#) at Gob, when Sibbekai the Hushathite killed Saph, who was one of the descendants of the Rephaim. <sup>[2]</sup>

## 2 Samuel 21:19

### Elhanan son of Jair the Bethlehemite killed Goliath the Gittite

Some versions translate this as “Elhanan son of Jair the Bethlehemite killed the brother of Goliath the Gittite.” (See: [Textual Variants](#))

### Elhanan son of Jair ... Goliath

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Bethlehemite ... Gittite

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### whose spear was like a weaver’s beam

When a person was weaving a cloth he would run the threads through hooks attached to large sticks called a “weaver’s beam.” This means Goliath’s spear was larger than a normal spear. (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)
- [son of](#)
- [Goliath](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> It came about again in a battle with [the Philistines](#) at Gob, that Elhanan [son of Jair](#) the Bethlehemite killed [Goliath](#) the Gittite, the staff of whose spear was like a weaver’s beam.

## 2 Samuel 21:20

### twenty-four in number

“24 fingers and toes altogether” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Rephaim

This people group was known for its giant warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [on each hand](#)

### ULT

**20** It came about in another battle at Gath that there was a man of great height who had six fingers [on each hand](#) and six toes on each foot, 24 in number. He also was descended from the Rephaim.

## 2 Samuel 21:21

### Jonathan son of Shimeah

These are names of men. Shimeah was David's brother. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [son of](#)
- [David](#)
- [s brother](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> When he taunted [Israel](#), Jonathan [son of Shimeah](#), [David's brother](#), killed him.

## 2 Samuel 21:22

### they were killed by the hand of David and by the hand of his soldiers

Here “by the hand of” means “through” or “by.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “David and his soldiers killed them” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and they were killed](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [and by the hand of](#)
- [David](#)
- [his soldiers](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> These four were descendants of the Rephaim of Gath, [and they were killed by the hand of David and by the hand of his soldiers](#).

21:8 <sup>[1]</sup> but 2SA 6:23 says she had no children; or Michal may have been another name for Merab.

21:18 <sup>[2]</sup> in the Hebrew text, some versions have or .

## 2 Samuel 22

### 2 Samuel 22 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetic song in 22:2-51.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### God rescued David

God rescued David when he thought he would die. He protected David, fought against his enemies, and enabled him to defeat his enemies.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Metaphor

David uses many metaphors to express his trust in God's protection: "my rock, my fortress, my shield, the horn of my salvation, my stronghold and my refuge." He used other metaphors to express his hopelessness: "the waves of death surrounded me," "the rushing waters of worthlessness overwhelmed me," "the cords of sheol surrounded me;" "the snares of death trapped me," and "the surging water." He also used metaphors for the victory God gave him: "I can run over a barricade" and "by my God I can leap over a wall." (See: [Metaphor](#) and [trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#))

## 2 Samuel 22:1

### General Information:

David's song to Yahweh starts. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### **out of the hand of all his enemies, and out of the hand of Saul**

This is a progression from enemies in general to one specific enemy of David, King Saul.

### **out of the hand of**

This metonym means "out of the power of." (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [out of the hand of](#)
- [his enemies](#)
- [Saul](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> [David](#) sang [to Yahweh](#) the words of this song on the day that [Yahweh](#) rescued him [out of the hand of](#) all his [enemies](#), and out of the hand of [Saul](#).



## 2 Samuel 22:2

### Yahweh is my rock, my fortress

This metaphor shows a progression from a part, "rock," to the whole, "fortress." A fortress is built of many large rocks. This means Yahweh has the strength to protect his people from harm. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh is](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He said, "Yahweh is my rock, my fortress, the one who rescues me."

## 2 Samuel 22:3

### General Information:

David's song to Yahweh continues. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### God is my rock ... He is my shield, the horn of my salvation, my stronghold

All of these metaphors are symbols of God's strength and power. They emphasize God's ability to protect and save his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God is](#)
- [the one who saves me](#)
- [the one who saves me](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> [God is](#) my rock. I take refuge in him.  
He is my shield, the horn of my salvation, my stronghold, and my refuge, [the one who saves me](#) from violence.

## 2 Samuel 22:4

### who is worthy to be praised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “who is worthy to receive praise” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### I will be saved from my enemies

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he will save me from my enemies” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will call on](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [I will be saved](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> [I will call on Yahweh](#), who is worthy to be praised, and [I will be saved](#) from my enemies.

## 2 Samuel 22:5

### General Information:

David's song to Yahweh continues. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### **For the waves of death surrounded me, the rushing waters of destruction overwhelmed me**

David compares the wicked men who wanted to kill him to flood waters that are about to drown him. These sentences have similar meanings and are used for emphasis. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Parallelism](#))

### **the rushing waters of destruction**

This is a picture of fast-flowing flood waters that destroy everything in their path.

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For the waves of death surrounded me, the rushing waters of destruction overwhelmed me.

## 2 Samuel 22:6

### The cords of Sheol surrounded me; the snares of death trapped me

David speaks about death and Sheol as if they are people who are trying to trap him as a hunter traps an animal. These phrases have similar meanings and are used for emphasis. (See: [Personification](#) and [Parallelism](#))

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> The cords of Sheol surrounded me;  
the snares of death trapped me.

## 2 Samuel 22:7

### General Information:

David's song to Yahweh continues. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### In my distress

"In my great trouble"

### he heard my voice from his temple

David is referring to the heavenly temple where Yahweh dwells. The earthly temple has not yet been built.

### my call for help went into his ears

Here the metonym "his ears" refers to Yahweh and his hearing of David's call for help. Alternate translation: "he heard my prayer for help" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### his ears

David speaks of Yahweh as if he had ears. (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I called
- I called
- to Yahweh
- to my God

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> In my distress I called to Yahweh; I called to my God; he heard my voice from his temple, and my call for help went into his ears.

## 2 Samuel 22:8

### General Information:

David's song to Yahweh continues. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Then the earth shook

This is Yahweh's response to David's cry for help from his enemies ([1 Samuel 22:7](#)). David uses the imagery of the earth shaking to emphasize Yahweh's terrible anger. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### earth shook ... heavens trembled

David speaks of the two extremes to include everything in creation. (See: [Merism](#))

### and were shaken, because God was angry

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because God's anger shook them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the earth](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [were shaken](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then [the earth](#) shook and trembled. The foundations of [the heavens were shaken](#) and trembled, because God was angry.

## 2 Samuel 22:9

### were ignited by it

This is Yahweh's response to David's cry for help from his enemies (1 Samuel 22:7). David uses the imagery of fire coming from Yahweh to emphasize Yahweh's terrible anger. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Smoke went up from out of his nostrils, and [blazing fire](#) came out of his mouth. Coals were ignited by it.

### his nostrils ... his mouth

David speaks of Yahweh as if he had these humans parts. (See: [Personification](#))

### Coals were ignited by it

Here Yahweh's anger is compared to fire, which causes coals to ignite and burn. Alternate translation: "The flame from his mouth set coals on fire" or "He also sent burning coals from his mouth" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blazing](#)
- [and...fire](#)



## 2 Samuel 22:10

### General Information:

David's song to Yahweh continues. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### He opened the heavens

David describes Yahweh's way of saving David from his enemies as a storm cloud gathering over a place. This emphasizes God's power and his anger. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### under his feet

David speaks of God as having feet like humans. (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the heavens](#)
- [and thick darkness was](#)

#### ULT

**10** He opened [the heavens](#) and came down, [and thick darkness was](#) under his feet.

## 2 Samuel 22:11

### He was seen on the wings of the wind

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “He appeared on the wings of the wind” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the wings of the wind

This expression speaks of the wind as if it were a bird. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [He rode](#)
- [a cherub](#)
- [the wind](#)

#### ULT

11 [He rode](#) on a [cherub](#) and flew. He was seen on the wings of [the wind](#). <sup>[1]</sup>

## 2 Samuel 22:12

### rain clouds in the skies

David describes Yahweh's way of saving David from his enemies as a storm cloud gathering over a place. This emphasizes God's power and his anger. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> He made [darkness](#) a tent around him, gathering heavy rain clouds in the skies.

### He made darkness a tent around him

Here the darkness Yahweh creates is compared to a tent which hides him completely. Alternate translation: "He hid himself in the darkness" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [darkness](#)

## 2 Samuel 22:13

### General Information:

David's song to Yahweh continues. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> From the lightning before him coals of [fire](#) fell.

### From the lightning before him coals of fire fell

This could mean: (1) "Out of his bright light he sent burning coals" or (2) "From his brightness he sent lightning"

### From the lightning before him

David continues describing Yahweh, whom he compares to a storm, coming to save him from his enemies. This emphasizes God's power and anger towards David's enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fire](#)

## 2 Samuel 22:14

### The Most High shouted.

David describes Yahweh doing these actions a person would do.  
(See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the heavens](#)

#### ULT

**14** [Yahweh](#) thundered from [the heavens](#).  
The Most High shouted.

## 2 Samuel 22:15

### He shot arrows

David describes Yahweh doing these actions a person would do. (See: [Personification](#))

#### ULT

**15** He shot arrows and scattered them—  
lightning bolts and dispersed them.

### He shot arrows ... lightning bolts

David compares the lightning from Yahweh's storm to arrows that a soldier would use. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### lightning bolts and dispersed them

David continues describing Yahweh, whom he compares to a storm, coming to save him from his enemies. This emphasizes God's power and anger towards David's enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## 2 Samuel 22:16

### General Information:

This continues David's song to Yahweh. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Then the channels of the sea were seen ... breath of his nostrils

When Yahweh shouted in his attack against David's enemies, it is compared to his power to create upheaval in the deepest parts of the ocean and the earth. This shows his great power and fierce anger. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Personification](#))

### the channels of the sea were seen

This means that the sea water moved and the ocean floor was visible. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "People could see the channels of the sea" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the channels of the sea

the deepest part of the sea, from which the Hebrews believed was where the water in the sea came

### the foundations of the world were laid bare at the rebuke of Yahweh, at the blast of the breath of his nostrils

David compares Yahweh's anger to turbulent movements of the ground. "This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh's rebuke, the breath of his nostrils, laid bare the foundations of the world" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [were laid bare](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the breath of](#)

### ULT

**16** Then the channels of the sea were seen; the foundations of the world [were laid bare](#) at the rebuke of [Yahweh](#), at the blast of [the breath of](#) his nostrils.

## 2 Samuel 22:17

### General Information:

This continues David's song to Yahweh. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### out of the surging water

David compares his enemies to a flood that threatens to drown him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

**17** He reached down from above; he took hold of me! He pulled me out of the surging water.



## 2 Samuel 22:18

### He rescued me from my strong enemy

David's enemies were overwhelming. He praises God for delivering him from all his enemies.

### Translation Words - ULT

- from my...enemy
- strong

#### ULT

**18** He rescued me from my strong enemy, from those who hated me, for they were too strong for me.

## 2 Samuel 22:19

### General Information:

This continues David's song to Yahweh. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### They came against me on the day of my distress

"My enemies fought against me when I was in great trouble"

### the day of my distress

"the time of my distress"

### but Yahweh was my support

"but Yahweh supported me" or "but Yahweh helped me"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**19** They came against me on the day of my distress, but [Yahweh](#) was my support.

## 2 Samuel 22:20

### a wide open place

This refers to a place where there was no danger and his enemies could not trap him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- He also brought...out
- he was pleased

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> He also brought me out to a wide open place. He saved me because he was pleased with me.

## 2 Samuel 22:21

### to the measure of the cleanness of my hands

Here “cleanness of my hands” means the same as “righteousness.”  
Alternate translation: “because I obey his commands” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [he has restored](#)
- [my hands](#)

### ULT

21 [Yahweh](#) has rewarded me according to my righteousness; [he has restored](#) me according to the cleanness of [my hands](#).

## 2 Samuel 22:22

### General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

### I have kept the ways of Yahweh

Here “the ways of Yahweh” refers to how Yahweh wants his people to act. This means David has done what Yahweh commands.

### Translation Words - ULT

- I have kept
- Yahweh
- have...acted wickedly
- by turning from my God

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> For I have kept the ways of Yahweh and have not acted wickedly by turning from my God.

## 2 Samuel 22:23

### have been before me

This means David constantly reads and thinks about God's decrees.

### Translation Words - ULT

- his righteous decrees have been

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> For all his righteous decrees have been before me; as for his statutes, I have not turned away from them.

## 2 Samuel 22:24

### General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

### I have kept myself from sin

This refers to choosing not to sin against Yahweh. (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [from sin](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> I have also been innocent before him,  
and I have kept myself [from sin](#).

## 2 Samuel 22:25

### to the degree of my cleanness in his sight

Here “my cleanness” means the same as “my righteousness.”  
Alternate translation: “because he knows that I have done what he commands” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Therefore...has restored](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> [Therefore Yahweh has restored](#) me  
according to my righteousness,  
according to my cleanness in his sight.



## 2 Samuel 22:26

### General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

### Translation Words - ULT

- a man who is

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> To the faithful one, you show yourself to be faithful; to a man who is blameless, you show yourself to be blameless.

## 2 Samuel 22:27

### you are perverse to the twisted

Here “perverse” means to be cunning or crafty, and “twisted” means to turn away from what is good and right. This means God is wise in how he deals with wicked people.

#### ULT

27 With the pure you show yourself pure, but you are perverse to the twisted.

## 2 Samuel 22:28

### General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

### **your eyes are against the proud**

Here the metonym “your eyes” refers to what Yahweh sees. This means Yahweh watches the proud person. (See: [Personification](#))

### **you bring them down**

“you destroy their pride”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [You save](#)
- [people](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> [You save](#) afflicted [people](#), but your eyes are against the proud, and you bring them down.

## 2 Samuel 22:29

### you are my lamp, Yahweh. Yahweh lights up my darkness

This metaphor compares Yahweh to a lamp, which means he gives David light and helps him to see when things seem hopeless. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my darkness](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> For you are my lamp, [Yahweh](#).  
[Yahweh](#) lights up [my darkness](#).

## 2 Samuel 22:30

### General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

### I can run over a barricade

Here “barricade” may refer to a group of soldiers or to a stone wall. Either way it means God enables David to defeat his enemies.

### I can leap over a wall

David is exaggerating to emphasize Yahweh’s help. Alternate translation: “I can climb over the wall that surrounds their city” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by my God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> For by you I can run over a troop of men; [by my God](#) I can leap over a wall.

## 2 Samuel 22:31

### The word of Yahweh is pure

“Everything Yahweh says is true”

### He is a shield

The metaphor “a shield” emphasizes God’s power to protect his people. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [As for God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> [As for God](#), his way is perfect. The word of [Yahweh](#) is pure. He is a shield to everyone who takes refuge in him.

## 2 Samuel 22:32

### General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

### For who is God except Yahweh, and who is a rock except our God?

David uses this question to emphasize that there is no God apart from Yahweh. These may be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "Yahweh alone is God. Our God alone is a rock." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### who is a rock

David compares Yahweh to a rock to emphasize his strength and ability to protect his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [our God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> For who is God except [Yahweh](#), and who is a rock except [our God](#)?

## 2 Samuel 22:33

### he leads the blameless person on his path

Yahweh keeps the blameless person safe and removes anything that may harm him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God is](#)
- [my refuge](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> [God is my refuge](#), and he leads the blameless person on his path.



## 2 Samuel 22:34

### General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

### He makes my feet swift like a deer and places me on the high hills

Here David's feet are compared to those of a deer using exaggeration. Yahweh gives David the strength to move quickly and provides secure places for protection and rest. (See: [Simile](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> He makes my feet swift like a deer and [places me](#) on the high hills.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [places me](#)

## 2 Samuel 22:35

### my hands ... and my arms

Both of these refer to David. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### to bend a bow of bronze

Only a very strong man could use a bow made from metal.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my hands](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> He trains [my hands](#) for war, and my arms to bend a bow of bronze.

## 2 Samuel 22:36

### General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

### the shield of your salvation

David compares Yahweh's power to save him to a shield that protects a soldier from his enemy. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### your favor

God answered David's prayers and granted him blessings and success over his enemies.

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> You have given me the shield of your salvation, and your favor has made me great.

## 2 Samuel 22:37

### **You have made a wide place for my feet beneath me**

Yahweh has put David in a safe place where his enemies cannot trap him. Here he refers to himself by his “feet” to emphasize his ability to stand securely. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### **ULT**

<sup>37</sup> You have made a wide place for my feet beneath me, so my feet have not slipped.

## 2 Samuel 22:38

### General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

### pursued my enemies

“chased my enemies”

### Translation Words - ULT

- I pursued
- my enemies
- I did...turn back
- they were destroyed

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> I pursued my enemies and destroyed them. I did not turn back until they were destroyed.

## 2 Samuel 22:39

### I devoured them and smashed them

Here David compares himself to a wild animal. Alternate translation: "I completely destroyed them like a wild animal devouring its prey" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### under my feet

Here "feet" refers to the power and control of victory over his enemies. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I devoured them](#)
- [They have fallen](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> [I devoured them](#) and smashed them; they cannot rise. [They have fallen](#) under my feet.

## 2 Samuel 22:40

### General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

### You put strength on me like a belt for battle

Here the strength that Yahweh gives is compared to a belt for battle that allowed David to do mighty things. (See: [Simile](#))

### you put under me those who rise up against me

“you helped me defeat those who fought against me”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [strength](#)
- [you put](#)

#### ULT

**40** You put [strength](#) on me like a belt for battle; [you put](#) under me those who rise up against me.

## 2 Samuel 22:41

### the back of my enemies' necks

This could mean: (1) David seeing the backs of the enemy as they run away or (2) David putting his foot on the back of his enemy's neck after he defeats him.

### I annihilated

"I completely destroyed"

#### ULT

41 You gave me the back of my enemies' necks; I annihilated those who hated me.



## 2 Samuel 22:42

### General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

### They cried

“My enemies cried”

### they cried out to Yahweh, but he did not answer them

The time for Yahweh’s judgment had come upon them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- one saved them
- Yahweh
- he did...answer them

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> They cried for help, but no one saved them; they cried out to Yahweh, but he did not answer them.

## 2 Samuel 22:43

### like dust on the ground ... like mud in the streets

This means that David completely destroyed his enemies. These two phrases “like dust on the ground” and “like mud on the streets” have a similar meaning and are used for emphasis. (See: [Simile](#) and [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [on the ground](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> I beat them into fine pieces like dust [on the ground](#), I pulverized them and stamped on them like mud in the streets.

## 2 Samuel 22:44

### General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

### from the disputes of my own people

This refers to those among the Israelites who rebelled against King David.

### You have kept me as the head of nations

“You placed me as ruler over the nations.” Here “nations” refers to other nations besides Israel.

### A people that I have not known

“A foreign people”

### Translation Words - ULT

- my own people
- A people
- You have kept me
- nations
- that I have...known
- serves me

### ULT

**44** You also have rescued me from the disputes of **my own people**. **You have kept me** as the head of **nations**. **A people that I have not known serves me**.

## 2 Samuel 22:45

### Foreigners were forced to bow to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Foreigners bowed down to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Sons of](#)
- [foreigners](#)
- [were forced to bow](#)

#### ULT

<sup>45</sup> [Sons of foreigners were forced to bow](#) to me. As soon as they heard of me, they obeyed me.

## 2 Samuel 22:46

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- foreigners

#### ULT

<sup>46</sup> The sons of foreigners faded away;  
they came trembling out of their  
strongholds.

## 2 Samuel 22:47

### May my rock be praised. May God be exalted

These sentences have similar meaning and are used for emphasis. These may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May everyone praise my rock. May everyone exalt God" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

**47** [Yahweh lives!](#) May my rock [be praised](#). May [God be exalted](#), the rock of my salvation.

### my rock ... the rock

David compares Yahweh to a rock to emphasize his power to protect his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [lives](#)
- [May...be praised](#)
- [God](#)
- [May...be exalted](#)

## 2 Samuel 22:48

### the one who brings down peoples under me

“the one who puts the people of other nations under my rule”

### Translation Words - ULT

- This is the God
- peoples

#### ULT

**48** This is the God who executes vengeance for me, the one who brings down peoples under me.

## 2 Samuel 22:49

**you lifted me up above those who rose up  
against me**

“you saved me from my enemies and gave me honor”

**from violent men**

“from those who want to harm me”

### Translation Words - ULT

- He sets me free
- from my enemies

### ULT

<sup>49</sup> He sets me free from my enemies.

Indeed, you lifted me up above those who rose up against me. You rescue me from violent men.



## 2 Samuel 22:50

### General Information:

David concludes his song to Yahweh.

### to your name

Here the metonym “name” refers to Yahweh’s reputation. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [among the nations](#)

### ULT

<sup>50</sup> Therefore I will worship you, [Yahweh](#), [among the nations](#); I will sing praises to your name.

## 2 Samuel 22:51

### he shows his covenant loyalty to his anointed one

Here David may be referring to the promises Yahweh made in [2 Samuel 7:8](#)

### Translation Words - ULT

- God gives great
- to his king
- his covenant faithfulness

### ULT

<sup>51</sup> God gives great victory to his king, and he shows his covenant faithfulness to his anointed one, to David and to his descendants forever.”

22:11 <sup>[1]</sup> .

## 2 Samuel 23

### 2 Samuel 23 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 23:2-7.

2 Samuel 23:8-39 is a list of the famous people in David's army along with some of the special deeds some of them did. (See: [work](#), [works](#), [deeds](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Everlasting covenant

This is a reference to the covenant God previously made with David. (See: [2 Samuel 7](#), [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#) and [covenant](#)).

## 2 Samuel 23:1

### Now

This marks the beginning of a new section of the book.

### these are the last words

This refers to what David will say in 2 Samuel 23:2-7.

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now these are the last words of [David](#), a declaration by [David son of Jesse](#), a declaration by the man who was highly honored, the one anointed by [the God of Jacob](#), the sweet psalmist of [Israel](#).

### the man who was highly honored, the one anointed by the God of Jacob

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the man whom the God of Jacob highly honored and anointed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### anointed by the God of Jacob

Anointing was done by pouring oil on a person’s head. This was done to choose who would serve God as king or priest. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### psalmist

This is a person who writes psalms or songs.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [son of](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [Israel](#)

## 2 Samuel 23:2

**by me**

by David

**and his word was on my tongue**

Here “on my tongue” is a metonym for David speaking. Alternate translation: “he gave me a message to speak”  
(See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> “[The Spirit of Yahweh](#) spoke by me,  
and his word was on my tongue.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Spirit of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

## 2 Samuel 23:3

### General Information:

This continues David's last words.

### The God of Israel spoke, the Rock of Israel ... me

Here the "God of Israel" is the same as the "Rock of Israel." The two phrases say essentially the same thing. David compares God to a rock to emphasize his power to protect his people. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### The one who rules righteously over men, who rules in the fear of God

These two sentences both say that the king will respect God and do what God wants him to do. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### in the fear of God

"respecting God"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The God of](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [The one who rules](#)
- [who rules in](#)
- [righteously](#)
- [over men](#)
- [the fear of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The God of Israel spoke, the Rock of Israel said to me, 'The one who rules righteously over men, who rules in the fear of God.'

## 2 Samuel 23:4

### He will be like the morning light ... sunshine after rain

Here God is comparing the king to the morning light and sunshine after the rain. These are all ways of saying this king would be a delight to God and a blessing for the people. These two phrases have a similar meaning and are used for emphasis. Alternate translation: "He will be a delight to all" (See: [Simile](#) and [Parallelism](#))

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> He will be like the morning light when the sun rises, a morning without clouds, when the tender grass springs up from the earth through bright sunshine after rain.

## 2 Samuel 23:5

### General Information:

This continues David's last words.

### Indeed, is my family not like this before God?

Here David is saying that he agrees with God. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "My family is indeed like this before God!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Has he not made ... way?

David acknowledges that God has made a covenant with him. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "He has indeed made ... way." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ordered and sure

This means God's covenant is properly organized and will not change so David's family can trust it.

### Does he not increase my salvation ... desire?

David believes that God will always help him and cause him to prosper. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "He increases my salvation and gives me my every desire." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [is my family](#)
- [an...covenant](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Indeed, [is my family](#) not like this before God? Has he not made an everlasting [covenant](#) with me, ordered and sure in every way? Does he not increase my salvation and fulfill my every desire?



## 2 Samuel 23:6

### General Information:

This concludes David's last words.

### **But the worthless will all be like thorns to be thrown away**

Here the wicked person is compared to useless thorns. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But the wicked person is worthless and dangerous like thorns we throw away" (See: [Simile](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### **because they cannot be gathered by one's hands**

"because no one can pick them up with his hands without the thorns hurting him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by one's hands](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But the worthless will all be like thorns to be thrown away, because they cannot be gathered [by one's hands](#).

## 2 Samuel 23:7

### They must be burned up where they lie

“Where thorns are found, that is where they must be burned.” This means God will destroy wicked people.

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The man who touches them must use an iron tool or the shaft of a spear. They must be burned up where they lie.”

## 2 Samuel 23:8

### Jeshbaal

This is the name of a man. Other versions read Josheb Basshebeth, Jashobeam, Ishbaal, or Ishbosheth because various ancient copies have these variations. Translators may choose to say this in a footnote to their translation (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Hachmonite

This is the name of a people group. Alternate translation: “son of Hachmon” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### eight hundred

“800” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the names of](#)
- [mighty men](#)
- [the leader of](#)
- [wielded](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> These are [the names of](#) David’s [mighty men](#): Jeshbaal the Hachmonite was [the leader of](#) the mighty men. He [wielded](#) his spear and killed 800 men on one occasion. <sup>[1]</sup>

## 2 Samuel 23:9

### General Information:

This continues the list of David's greatest soldiers. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- was Eleazar
- son of
- the Ahohite (2)
- mighty men
- David
- who had gathered together
- who had gathered together
- Israel

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> After him [was Eleazar son of Dodai the Ahohite](#), one of the three [mighty men](#). He was with [David](#) when they taunted the Philistines [who had gathered together](#) to do battle, and when the men of [Israel](#) had retreated.

## 2 Samuel 23:10

### The army returned after Eleazar

This means that the army returned after Eleazar returned from battle. Alternate translation: “The Israeli army returned to the battle field after Eleazar had already won the battle” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### only to strip the bodies

“only to take what they wanted from the dead bodies of the enemies”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [his hand](#)
- [his hand](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [The army](#)
- [returned](#)

### ULT

**10** Eleazar stood and fought the Philistines until [his hand](#) became weary and [his hand](#) stiffened to the grip of his sword. [Yahweh](#) brought about a great victory that day. [The army returned](#) after Eleazar, only to strip the bodies.

## 2 Samuel 23:11

### General Information:

This continues the list of David's greatest soldiers. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### a field of lentils

"a field where someone had planted lentils"

### lentils

a flat seed, eaten like beans (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### the army fled

"the Israelite army ran away"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)
- [The Philistines](#)
- [them](#)
- [and the army](#)

### ULT

**11** After him was Shammah [son of](#) Agee, a Hararite. [The Philistines](#) gathered together where there was an area of a field full of lentils, [and the army](#) fled from [them](#).

## 2 Samuel 23:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- and defended it
- the Philistines
- Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> But Shammah stood in the middle of the field and defended it. He killed the Philistines, and Yahweh brought about a great victory.

## 2 Samuel 23:13

### Three of the thirty

These are not the same three soldiers mentioned in [2 Samuel 23:8-12](#).

### the thirty

“the 30” or “the thirty bravest Israelite soldiers.” The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. (See: [Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### cave of Adullam

“cave near the town of Adullam.” Adullam is near Bethlehem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Valley of Rephaim

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in [2 Samuel 5:18](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [soldiers](#)
- [David](#)
- [harvest time](#)
- [the Philistines](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Three of the thirty [soldiers](#) went down to [David](#) at [harvest time](#), to the cave of Adullam. The army of [the Philistines](#) was camped in the Valley of Rephaim.



## 2 Samuel 23:14

### in his stronghold

“in his protected place”

### the Philistines had established at Bethlehem

“some Philistines soldiers were controlling the village of Bethlehem”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> At that time David was in his stronghold, while [the Philistines](#) had established a garrison at Bethlehem.

## 2 Samuel 23:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- by the gate

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> David was longing for water and said, "If only someone would give me water to drink from the well at Bethlehem, the well that is **by the gate!**"

## 2 Samuel 23:16

### broke through the army

“fought their way through the enemy army”

### Translation Words - ULT

- mighty men
- the Philistines
- the gate
- David
- to Yahweh

### ULT

**16** So these three **mighty men** broke through the army of **the Philistines** and drew water out of the well of Bethlehem, the well at **the gate**. They took the water and brought it to **David**, but he refused to drink it. Instead, he poured it out **to Yahweh**.

## 2 Samuel 23:17

### Should I drink the blood of men who have risked their lives?

David compares the water to blood because the men risked their lives to bring the water to him. He uses a question to emphasize this. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Drinking this water would be like drinking the blood of those men who have risked their lives to bring it to me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [their lives](#)
- [mighty men](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Then he said, "Yahweh, far be it from me, that I should do this. Should I drink the blood of men who have risked [their lives](#)?" So he refused to drink it. These things were done by the three [mighty men](#).

## 2 Samuel 23:18

### Abishai ... Zeruiah

These are the names of men. Translate them as in [2 Samuel 2:18](#).

### captain over the three

This means Abishai was the leader of the three who went and got water for David.

### three hundred men

“300 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

### He was often mentioned along with the three soldiers

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “People often mentioned him when they spoke about the three bravest men” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brother of](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [and son of](#)
- [captain](#)
- [fought with](#)
- [He was often mentioned along with](#)

#### ULT

**18** Abishai, [brother of Joab and son of Zeruiah](#), was [captain](#) over the three. He once [fought with](#) his spear against 300 men and killed them. [He was often mentioned along with](#) the three.

## 2 Samuel 23:19

### Was he not even more famous than the three?

This question is used to emphasize how famous he was. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "He was even more famous than the three." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### three most famous soldiers

This refers to Josheb Basshebeth, Eleazar, and Shimeah. Abishai was not as famous as these soldiers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Was he not even more famous](#)
- [captain](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> [Was he not even more famous](#) than the three? He was made their [captain](#). However, his fame did not equal the fame of the three most famous soldiers.

## 2 Samuel 23:20

### Kabzeel

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Jehoiada

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [2 Samuel 8:18](#).

### Ariel

This is the name of a man.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Benaiah...was](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [he was](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [who did mighty feats](#)
- [Moab](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> [Benaiah](#) from [Kabzeel](#) [was the son of Jehoiada](#); [he was](#) a strong man [who did mighty feats](#). He killed the two sons of [Ariel](#) of [Moab](#). He also went down into a pit and killed a lion while it was snowing.

## 2 Samuel 23:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- The Egyptian had
- Egyptian
- in his hand
- out of the...s hand

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then he killed a very large Egyptian man. **The Egyptian had** a spear **in his hand**, but Benaiah fought against him with only a staff. He seized the spear **out of the Egyptian's hand** and then killed him with his own spear.



## 2 Samuel 23:22

### did these feats

“did these mighty deeds”

### he was named alongside the three mighty men

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people praise him like they praised the three mighty men” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### three mighty men

This refers to Josheb Basshebeth, Eleazar, and Shimeah.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Benaiah](#)
- [son of](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [named alongside the](#)
- [mighty men](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> [Benaiah son of Jehoiada](#) did these feats, and he was [named alongside the three mighty men](#).

## 2 Samuel 23:23

**He was more highly regarded than the thirty soldiers in general, but he was not regarded quite as highly as the three mighty men**

“He was more famous than the other 30 soldiers except for the three best soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

### **his bodyguard**

a group of soldiers in charge of guarding David

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- He was more highly regarded...in general
- Yet...put him in charge
- David

### **ULT**

<sup>23</sup> He was more highly regarded than the thirty soldiers in general, but he was not regarded quite as highly as the three mighty men. Yet David put him in charge of his bodyguard.

## 2 Samuel 23:24

### General Information:

This is a list of David's greatest soldiers. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### The thirty

"The 30 very famous soldiers" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother of
- Joab
- son of

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> The thirty included the following men: Asahel [brother of Joab](#), Elhanan [son of Dodo](#) from Bethlehem,

## 2 Samuel 23:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Shammah the Harodite, Elikah the Harodite,

## 2 Samuel 23:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son of

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Helez the Paltite, Ira son of Ikkesh the Tekoite,

## 2 Samuel 23:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Abiezer the Anathothite, Sibbekai <sup>[2]</sup>  
the Hushathite,

## 2 Samuel 23:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Zalmon the Ahohite, Maharai the  
Netophathite;

## 2 Samuel 23:29

### General Information:

This continues the list of David's greatest soldiers. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- son of
- the Benjamites
- the Benjamites

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Heleb [son of](#) Baanah, the Netophathite, Ithai [son of](#) Ribai from Gibeah of [the Benjamites](#),



## 2 Samuel 23:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Benaiah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> [Benaiah](#) the Pirathonite, Hiddai of the valleys of Gaash.

## 2 Samuel 23:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Abi-Albon the Arbathite, Azmaveth  
the Barhumite,

## 2 Samuel 23:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Eliahba the Shaalbonite, the sons of Jashen, Jonathan,

## 2 Samuel 23:33

### General Information:

This continues the list of David's greatest soldiers. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Shammah the Hararite, Ahiam [son of](#) Sharar the Hararite,

## 2 Samuel 23:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- the Maakathite (2)
- son of (3)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Eliphelet son of Ahasbai the Maakathite, Eiam son of Ahithophel the Gilonite,

## 2 Samuel 23:35

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Hezro the Carmelite, Paarai the  
Arbite,

## 2 Samuel 23:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- Nathan

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Igal son of Nathan from Zobah, Bani from the tribe of Gad,

## 2 Samuel 23:37

### General Information:

This concludes the list of David's greatest soldiers. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Ammonite](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [son of](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> Zelek [the Ammonite](#), Naharai the Beerothite, armor bearer to [Joab son of Zeruiah](#),



## 2 Samuel 23:38

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

<sup>38</sup> Ira the Ithrite, Gareb the Ithrite,

## 2 Samuel 23:39

### thirty-seven in all

“there were 37 total” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Uriah](#)
- [the Hittite](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> [Uriah the Hittite](#)—37 in all.

23:8 <sup>[1]</sup>, some versions have , , , or .  
These all are probably forms of the same name.

23:27 <sup>[2]</sup> . See also 2 Samuel 21:18 and 1 Chronicles 11:29. The Hebrew text has , .

## 2 Samuel 24

### 2 Samuel 24 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Counting soldiers

David ordered the leaders of his army to count how many men of fighting age there were. He was not supposed to do this because it showed he did not trust God. God was displeased and offered David three punishments. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

## 2 Samuel 24:1

### the anger of Yahweh was ignited against Israel

The word “ignite” means start a fire. Here Yahweh’s anger is compared to that of a fire. Alternate translation: “the anger of Yahweh started to burn like a fire” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he moved David against them

“he caused David to oppose them”

### Go, count Israel and Judah

In the law of Moses, God prohibited the kings of Israel from taking a census of fighting men. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [against Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [David](#)
- [Go](#)
- [Judah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Again the anger of [Yahweh](#) was ignited [against Israel](#), and he moved [David](#) against them saying, “[Go](#), count [Israel](#) and [Judah](#).”

## 2 Samuel 24:2

### Dan to Beersheba

This phrase uses two place names Dan, in the far north, and Beersheba, in the far south, to represent the entire country. (See: [Merism](#))

### count all the people ... fit for battle

This means to count all the men except those men who are either too young, too old, or physically unable to fight.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [the commander of](#)
- [the tribes of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [and count](#)
- [all the people](#)
- [men fit for battle](#)
- [so that I may know](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> [The king](#) said to [Joab the commander of the army](#), who was with him, “Go, now, throughout all [the tribes of Israel](#), from Dan to [Beersheba](#), and count all [the people](#), so that I may know the total number of [men fit for battle](#).”

## 2 Samuel 24:3

### multiply ... hundred times

This means “produce 100 more people for every one person there is now.” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joab
- the king
- the king
- the king
- Yahweh
- your God
- people
- my master
- does...want

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Joab said to the king, “May Yahweh your God multiply the number of people a hundred times, and may the eyes of my master the king see it take place. But why does my master the king want this?”

## 2 Samuel 24:4

### the king's word was final against Joab

Joab and the other commanders of King David's army were not able to convince David to not take a census.

### the king's word

This phrase represents the king's command to them. Alternate translation: "what the king had commanded" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- king
- Joab
- Joab
- the commanders of
- and the commanders
- So...went out
- the people of
- Israel

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Nevertheless, the king's word was final against Joab and against the commanders of the army. So Joab and the commanders went out from the king's presence to count the people of Israel.

## 2 Samuel 24:5

### They crossed

“Joab and the commanders of the army crossed”

### Aroer

This was a city on the northern edge of the Arnon River. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Jazer

This is a town in Gad. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [They crossed over](#)
- [the Jordan](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> [They crossed over the Jordan](#) and encamped near Aroer, south of the city in the valley. Then they traveled on through Gad to Jazer.



## 2 Samuel 24:6

### Tahtim Hodshi

This may refer to the town of Kadesh in the land of the Hittite people.  
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Gilead](#)
- [the land of](#)

### ULT

6 They came to [Gilead](#) and to [the land of](#) Tahtim Hodshi, then on to Dan Jaan and around toward Sidon.

## 2 Samuel 24:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Tyre
- the Hivites
- Then they went out
- Judah
- at Beersheba
- at Beersheba

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> They reached the stronghold of Tyre and all the cities of the Hivites and the Canaanites. Then they went out to the Negev in Judah at Beersheba.

## 2 Samuel 24:8

### they had gone

“Joab and the commanders had gone”

### nine months and twenty days

“9 months and 20 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> When they had gone throughout all [the land](#), they came back [to Jerusalem](#) at the end of nine months and 20 days.

## 2 Samuel 24:9

### Then Joab reported the total of the count of the fighting men to the king

“Then Joab told the king the total number of men ready for battle”

#### in Israel

This refers to the northern tribes of Israel.

#### 800,000...500,000

“eight hundred thousand ... five hundred thousand” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### who drew the sword

This metonym refers to the men who were ready to fight in the army. (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### of Judah

This refers to the southern tribe of Judah.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joab](#)
- [the fighting men](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [brave](#)
- [the sword](#)
- [Judah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then [Joab](#) reported the total of the count of [the fighting men](#) to [the king](#). There were in [Israel](#) 800000 [brave](#) men who drew [the sword](#), and the men of [Judah](#) were 500000 men.

## 2 Samuel 24:10

### David's heart afflicted him

The "heart" here is a metonym for David's emotions and conscience. Alternate translation: "David felt guilty" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Now, Yahweh, take away your servant's guilt

David refers to himself as "your servant." This is a polite way to speak to someone with greater authority.

#### ULT

**10** Then [David's heart](#) afflicted him after he had counted [the men](#). So [he](#) said to [Yahweh](#), "I have greatly [sinned](#) by doing this. Now, please, [Yahweh](#), take away [your servant's guilt](#), for I have acted very foolishly."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [he](#)
- [s heart](#)
- [the men](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [I have...sinned](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [s guilt](#)

## 2 Samuel 24:11

### the word of Yahweh came to the prophet Gad, David's seer, saying,

The idiom "the word of Yahweh came to" is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated this idiom in [2 Samuel 7:4](#). Alternate translation: "Yahweh gave a message to the prophet Gad, David's seer. He said," or "Yahweh spoke this message to the prophet Gad, David's seer:" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> When [David](#) rose up in the morning, the word of [Yahweh](#) came to [the prophet Gad, David's seer, saying,](#)

### David's seer

This means Gad was the official prophet in the royal palace.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [Gad](#)

## 2 Samuel 24:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Go
- David
- Yahweh
- I

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> "Go say to David: 'This is what Yahweh says: "I am giving you three choices. Choose one of them for me to do to you.'"

## 2 Samuel 24:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Gad
- David
- of famine
- your enemies
- they pursue you
- decide
- I should return

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> So Gad went to David and said to him, “Will three years of famine come to you in your land? Or will you flee three months from your enemies while they pursue you? Or will there be three days of plague in your land? Now decide what answer I should return to him who sent me this message.”



## 2 Samuel 24:14

### I am in deep trouble

"I am in terrible trouble"

### Let us fall into Yahweh's hands rather than into the hand of man

Here "hands" refer to power or control. Alternate translation: "Let Yahweh and not people punish us" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

**14** Then David said to Gad, "I am in deep trouble. Let us fall into Yahweh's hands rather than into the hand of man, for his merciful actions are very great."

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Gad
- in...trouble
- Yahweh
- into...s hands
- into the hand of
- man

## 2 Samuel 24:15

### a fixed time

This is the time God decided he would stop the plague.

### seventy thousand

“70,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

### from Dan to Beersheba

Here mentioning the city of Dan in the extreme north and the city Beersheba in the extreme south means the entire nation of Israel. (See: [Merism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [on Israel](#)
- [fixed](#)
- [people](#)
- [and...died](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> So [Yahweh](#) sent a plague [on Israel](#) from the morning to a [fixed](#) time, and 70000 [people died](#) from Dan to [Beersheba](#).

## 2 Samuel 24:16

### the angel reached out with his hand toward Jerusalem to destroy it

Here the metonym “hand” stands for the angel’s power. Alternate translation: “the angel was about to destroy the people in Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Yahweh changed his mind because of the harm

This means that Yahweh stopped the evil that he was allowing the angel to do. Alternate translation: “Yahweh felt grieved about the harm”

### Now draw back your hand

The metonym “hand” stands for the angel’s power. Alternate translation: “Do not harm them any longer” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Araunah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the threshing floor

A threshing floor was a hard, flat surface where edible grain was separated from chaff.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [with his hand](#)
- [your hand](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [the harm it would cause](#)
- [people](#)
- [the threshing floor of](#)
- [the Jebusite](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> When the angel reached out [with his hand](#) toward [Jerusalem](#) to destroy it, [Yahweh](#) changed his mind because of [the harm it would cause](#), and he said to the angel who was destroying [people](#), “Enough! Now draw back [your hand](#).” At that time the angel of [Yahweh](#) was standing at [the threshing floor of Araunah](#) [the Jebusite](#).

## 2 Samuel 24:17

### I have sinned, and I have acted perversely

These phrases mean the same thing and are combined for emphasis. Alternate translation: "I have sinned terribly" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### But these sheep, what have they done?

David uses a question and compares the people to sheep to emphasize that they have done nothing wrong. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "These ordinary people have done nothing wrong." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Please let your hand punish me

Here the metonym "hand" refers to power. Alternate translation: "Please punish me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the people](#)
- [I](#)
- [have sinned](#)
- [have acted perversely](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [your hand](#)
- [my father](#)

### ULT

17 Then [David](#) spoke to [Yahweh](#) when he saw the angel who had attacked [the people](#), and said, "Behold, [I have sinned](#), and I [have acted perversely](#). But these [sheep](#), what have they done? Please let [your hand](#) punish me and [my father's](#) family!"

## 2 Samuel 24:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Gad
- David
- an altar
- for Yahweh
- the Jebusite

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Then Gad came that day to David and said to him, "Go up and build an altar for Yahweh at the threshing floor of Araunah the Jebusite."

## 2 Samuel 24:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Gad
- Yahweh
- had commanded

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> So David went up as Gad instructed him to do, as Yahweh had commanded.

## 2 Samuel 24:20

### bowed to the king with his face to the ground

He was showing deep respect and honor to the king. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- to the king
- his servants
- So...went out
- and bowed
- to the ground

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Araunah looked out and saw [the king](#) and [his servants](#) approaching. [So](#) Araunah [went out and bowed to the king](#) with his face [to the ground](#).

## 2 Samuel 24:21

### so that the plague may be removed from the people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that Yahweh will remove this plague from the people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- my master
- the king
- his servant
- David
- threshing floor
- an altar
- for Yahweh
- the people

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then Araunah said, “Why has my master the king come to me, his servant?” David replied, “To buy your threshing floor, so I can build an altar for Yahweh, so that the plague may be removed from the people.”



## 2 Samuel 24:22

### what is good in your sight

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “what you think is good” or “what is good in your judgement” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### threshing sledges

heavy boards used to separate grain from the rest of the wheat plant

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [my master](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Do with it what is good](#)

### ULT

**22** Araunah said to [David](#), “Take it and offer it, [my master the king](#). [Do with it what is good](#) in your sight. Look, here are oxen for the burnt offering and threshing sledges and ox yokes for the wood.

## 2 Samuel 24:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- my king
- to you
- the king
- Yahweh
- your God

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> All this, my king, I, Araunah, will give to you." Then he said to the king, "May Yahweh your God accept you."

## 2 Samuel 24:24

### I will not offer ... anything that costs me nothing

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "I will only offer ... something that I have paid for" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### fifty shekels

"50 shekels." A shekel is 11 grams. (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)
- [I insist on buying](#)
- [I insist on buying](#)
- [as a burnt offering](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [my God](#)
- [David](#)
- [the threshing floor](#)
- [for...silver](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> [The king](#) said to [Araunah](#), "No, [I insist on buying](#) it at a price. I will not offer [as a burnt offering to Yahweh, my God](#), anything that costs me nothing." So [David](#) bought [the threshing floor](#) and the oxen for fifty shekels of [silver](#).

## 2 Samuel 24:25

### on behalf of the land

Here the metonym “land” stands for the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “on behalf of the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the plague on Israel was confined

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “God confined the plague that had been on Israel” or “God took the plague away from Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [an altar](#)
- [for...Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [burnt offerings](#)
- [Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> [David](#) built [an altar](#) for [Yahweh](#) there and offered on it [burnt offerings](#) and fellowship offerings. So [Yahweh](#) answered the prayer on behalf of the land, and the plague on [Israel](#) was confined.



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 24**

## Abstract Nouns

### Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

### Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 7:1; 7:11; 7:15; 11:16; 13:16; 17:2; 17:9; 17:14; 18:13; 19:11; 20:13)

## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.



## Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Abstract Nouns*

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 1:25; 3:2; 3:34; 5:13; 5:14; 5:17; 6:12; 6:22; 7:10; 7:16; 7:25; 7:26; 7:29; 8:13; 10:15; 10:17; 10:18; 10:19; 11:17; 11:24; 12:5; 12:13; 12:28; 12:30; 14:2; 14:8; 14:25; 15:11; 15:32; 17:9; 17:11; 17:23; 18:7; 18:18; 19:1; 19:8; 20:13; 20:21; 21:6; 21:9; 21:11; 21:13; 21:22; 22:4; 22:8; 22:11; 22:16; 22:45; 22:47; 23:1; 23:6; 23:18; 23:22; 24:21; 24:25)

# Apostrophe

## Description

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called an apostrophe?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

## Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34a ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, ... on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

## Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, ... on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

He said this about the altar: “This is what Yahweh says **about this altar**. ‘See, ... they will burn people’s bones on **it**.’”

**Mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **you**. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

**As for these mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **them**.

**(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:21](#); [1:25](#))**

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.  
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:17](#); [2:23](#); [2:28](#); [3:15](#); [4:12](#); [6:2](#); [6:7](#); [7:2](#); [8:16](#); [Notes](#); [10:4](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [11:3](#); [11:11](#); [11:20](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:13](#); [12:16](#); [12:18](#); [12:23](#); [13:2](#); [13:17](#); [13:18](#); [13:28](#); [14:7](#); [14:9](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [14:14](#); [14:21](#); [14:29](#); [14:32](#); [14:33](#); [15:3](#); [15:6](#); [15:7](#); [15:17](#); [15:20](#); [15:28](#); [15:31](#); [15:32](#); [15:34](#); [Notes](#); [16:8](#); [16:11](#); [16:21](#); [17:2](#); [17:3](#); [17:8](#); [17:13](#); [17:18](#); [17:21](#); [18:2](#); [18:3](#); [18:6](#); [18:9](#); [18:13](#); [18:14](#); [18:16](#); [18:17](#); [18:20](#); [19:2](#); [19:7](#); [19:9](#); [19:17](#); [19:21](#); [19:25](#); [19:37](#); [19:38](#); [19:43](#); [20:1](#); [20:6](#); [20:8](#); [20:12](#); [20:15](#); [20:22](#); [23:10](#); [23:13](#); [23:24](#); [24:1](#))

## Background Information

### Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

**Example** — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter’s cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin’s pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: “their village was going to have a feast the next day,” “He once killed three wild pigs in one day,” and “that they had brought with them.”

Often background information uses “be” verbs like “was” and “were,” rather than action verbs. Examples of these are “their village was going to have a feast the next day,” and “Peter **was** the best hunter in the village.”

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are “because,” “once,” and “had.”

### A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story
  - > \* Setting includes:
    - > \* where the story takes place
    - > \* when the story takes place
    - > \* who is present when the story begins
    - > \* what is happening when the story begins

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.



## Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about 30 years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

And Jesus himself was beginning about 30 years old. He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli,

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he was **going through the grain fields**, and his **disciples were picking and eating the heads of grain**, rubbing them in their hands. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said ...."

## Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

**And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, **having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother**, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram’s son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. **Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

“**When Abram was 86 years old,** Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael.”

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, **having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother,** and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done,** added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John’s rebuke and Herod’s actions.

“Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother’s wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases\]\]](#)  
[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:18](#); [3:1](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [5:2](#); [9:10](#); [14:25](#); [20:23](#); [21:2](#))

# Biblical Money

## Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

## Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

## Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

- (1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
- (2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
- (3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
- (4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

(5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

█ The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

█ "The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50**."

Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

█ "The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

█ "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

█ [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii**,<sup>1</sup> and the other, **50**." (Luke 7:41 ULT)

█ <sup>[1]</sup> A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)  
[Translate Unknowns](#)

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 18:11](#); [18:12](#); [24:24](#))

# Biblical Weight

## Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

## Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”

When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise, it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

## Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this, you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

█ The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talentes and 2,400 sekeles**."

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

█ "The bronze from the offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. <sup>1</sup>"

The footnote would look like:

█ <sup>[1]</sup> This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 12:30](#); [14:26](#); [21:16](#))

## Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

### Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."  
(Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest ...**"

And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you."  
(Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming**,
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations\]\]](#)

## Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, **“Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

And he commanded him **to tell no one**, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him, **“Tell no one.** But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_quotations](https://ufw.io/figs_quotations).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Quotes within Quotes](#)

**(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:8](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [7:15](#); [7:16](#))**



## Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

### Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “**useless**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

### Examples From the Bible

... in order **not** to be **un**fruitful. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

## Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

“For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

“... so that they may be fruitful.”

- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **unpunished**. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

“Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished.”

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

“All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](https://en.ta.man/translate/figs-verbs)

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 14:7](#); [19:7](#); [24:24](#))

## Doublet

### Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

### Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

- (1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
- (2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
- (3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

### Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

“He has one people **very spread out**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

• English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

“... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**.”

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:32](#); [6:21](#); [7:16](#); [12:24](#); [15:3](#); [17:2](#); [20:20](#))

# Ellipsis

## Description

An ellipsis<sup>1</sup> occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**  
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will sinners stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[1] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?* ([^1])

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

## Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

## Examples From the Bible

### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

## Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 9:5](#); [10:5](#); [13:4](#); [13:12](#); [13:28](#); [14:15](#); [17:9](#); [19:37](#); [19:40](#); [20:19](#); [20:20](#))

# Euphemism

## Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.  
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

## Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

## Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)



But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**”

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

“They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa.”

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:6](#); [1:12](#); [1:19](#); [1:25](#); [2:16](#); [2:21](#); [2:22](#); [2:26](#); [3:7](#); [3:38](#); [7:12](#); [11:4](#); [11:11](#); [11:17](#); [12:11](#); [13:11](#); [13:14](#); [13:20](#); [13:32](#); [16:11](#); [16:21](#); [16:22](#); [17:25](#); [18:11](#); [18:32](#); [20:3](#))

## Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Description

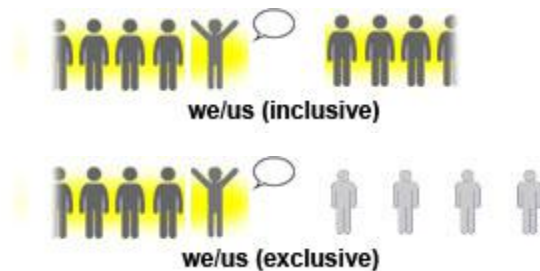
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Exclusive

They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

**We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

## Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7:22](#))

## First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

### Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

### Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 5:24](#); [7:19](#); [7:21](#); [7:25](#); [7:27](#); [7:29](#); [9:11](#); [16:18](#))

## Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](https://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](https://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 6:21](#))

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual\]\]](#)

# Fractions

## Description

A fraction is a number that represents part of a whole. When an item is divided into several equal parts, a fraction refers to one or more of those parts.

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7a ULT)

A hin is a container of a set size which is used for measuring wine and other liquids. The people were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts, filling up only one of those parts and offering that amount.

... **a third** of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9b ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have the letters “th” added to the end of the number, such as fourth, sixth, ninth, tenth.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ----- | ----- | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ----- | ----- | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

## Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many parts are included in a group.

## Examples From the Bible

Now to the **half-tribe** of Manasseh, Moses had given a possession in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave a possession among their brothers across the Jordan on the west. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “the half-tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

So the four angels who had been prepared for that hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released so that they would kill **a third** of mankind. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

## Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

- (1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
- (2) For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
- (3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

## Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

**A third** of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.

Then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of **three-tenths** of an ephah of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

... then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

- (2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

... **two-thirds of a shekel** ... (1 Samuel 13:21b ULT)

... **eight grams** of silver ... (1 Samuel 13:21b UST)

... **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

... **six and one-half liters** of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9b UST)

- (3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

... **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

**six quarts** of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Biblical Money](#)

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 18:2](#))



## Go and Come

### Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

### Examples From the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark." (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land ..."

They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

### Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...”

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark ...” (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark ...”

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 6:2](#); [6:12](#); [6:20](#); [9:6](#); [10:16](#))

## Hendiadys

### Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called a hendiadys. In a hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

... his own **kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or a **glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

### Examples From the Bible

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

“A mouth” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes what comes from the mouth.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

### Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
- (2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
- (3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

For I will give you **wise words** ...

Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

for I will give you **words of wisdom**.

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

If you are **willingly obedient** ...

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective “obedient” can be substituted with the verb “obey.”

if you **obey willingly** ...

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun “glory” can be changed to the adjective “glorious” to make it clear that Jesus’ appearing is what we hope for. Also, “Jesus Christ” can be moved to the front of the phrase and “great God and Savior” put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing of Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Doublet](#)

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:38](#))

## How to Translate Names

### Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

**Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out')**, and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?"  
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** <sup>1</sup>

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> Most versions say "Saul" here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called "Paul."

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:



[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

(Go back to: Introduction to 2 Samuel; 2 Samuel 1:1; 1:18; 2:4; 2:8; 2:9; 2:12; 2:13; 2:16; 2:18; 2:19; 2:20; 2:24; 2:29; 2:30; 3:2; 3:3; 3:4; 3:5; 3:7; 3:13; 3:15; 3:16; 3:23; 3:26; 3:27; 3:28; 3:30; 3:37; 3:39; 4:1; 4:2; 4:3; 4:4; 5:11; 5:14; 5:15; 5:16; 5:18; 5:20; 5:22; 5:23; 5:25; 6:2; 6:3; 6:6; 6:8; 6:10; 8:3; 8:8; 8:9; 8:10; 8:13; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 9:2; 9:4; 9:12; 10:1; 10:2; 10:6; 10:16; 11:1; 11:21; 12:25; 13:3; 13:23; 13:37; 14:2; 15:12; 15:19; 15:23; 15:27; 15:32; 15:36; 16:1; 16:5; 16:9; 16:15; 16:16; 16:20; 17:1; 17:15; 17:17; 17:18; 17:19; 17:20; 17:24; 17:25; 17:26; 17:27; 18:2; 18:5; 18:18; 18:19; 19:13; 19:16; 19:17; 19:21; 19:24; 19:27; 19:31; 19:32; 19:37; 20:1; 20:4; 20:6; 20:7; 20:14; 20:23; 20:24; 20:25; 20:26; 21:8; 21:12; 21:14; 21:16; 21:18; 21:19; 21:20; 21:21; 23:8; 23:9; 23:11; 23:13; 23:20; 23:24; 23:29; 23:33; 23:37; 24:5; 24:6; 24:16)

## Hyperbole

### Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

### Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

### Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

## Examples From the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches**. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

## Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
  - > Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
  - > and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

**The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

**In general**, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

**Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

or:

**Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:35](#); [5:17](#); [14:11](#); [15:20](#); [15:23](#); [15:35](#); [16:22](#); [17:11](#); [17:13](#); [18:3](#); [19:6](#); [19:8](#); [22:30](#); [22:34](#))

## Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining ...” “What if the sun stopped shining ...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining ...” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

### Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Hypothetical Situations in the Past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

## Hypothetical Situations in the Present

And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

## Hypothetical Situation in the Future

**Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved.** But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

## Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

## Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_hypo](https://ufw.io/figs_hypo).

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:27](#); [Notes](#); [19:6](#))



## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

█ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

█ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

█ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

█ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

█ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

█ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

█ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

█ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

█ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

█ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

█ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

█ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 1:9; 1:15; 2:10; 2:22; 4:8; 4:9; 5:1; 7:3; 7:4; 7:9; 7:11; 7:12; 7:22; 10:5; 11:3; 11:5; 11:6; 11:7; 11:8; 11:13; 11:27; 12:5; 12:14; 12:15; 12:28; 13:5; 13:6; 13:8; 13:9; 13:10; 13:20; 13:33; 13:34; 14:7; 14:11; 14:12; 14:19; 14:22; 15:12; 15:14; 15:16; 15:25; 16:4; 16:11; 16:12; 16:21; 17:3; 17:11; 17:12; 17:14; 17:15; 17:16; 17:21; 17:23; 18:12; 18:31; 19:7; 19:11; 19:13; 19:14; 19:19; 19:22; 19:27; Notes; 20:3; 20:11; 20:20; 20:21; 20:23; 20:24; 21:22; 22:21; 22:24; 22:25; 24:11)

## Introduction of a New Event

### Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events]]

### Examples From the Bible

**In the days of Herod**, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

**And it happened that** in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

**The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

**Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king**, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

**Now in those days** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

**Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

## Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
- (3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
- (4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him ... (Mark 2:14a ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector’s tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as “another time,” or “someone.”

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

**After that**, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

**Again he began** to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone’s house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.

**Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Introduction of New and Old Participants](#)

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:6](#); [7:1](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [13:1](#); [13:23](#); [13:30](#); [13:36](#); [15:1](#); [15:7](#); [15:32](#); [16:16](#); [17:21](#); [17:27](#))

## Introduction of New and Old Participants

### Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

Now **there was a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus** ... **This man** came to Jesus at night ... Jesus replied and said to **him** ... (John 3:1, 2a, 3a)

The first bolded phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. After being introduced, he is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he has become an old participant.

This page answers the question: *Why cannot the readers of my translation understand who the author was writing about?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

## Examples From the Bible

### New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man,” as in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who his family was, and what his name was.

**Now there was a man** from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2a ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important participant is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah’s wife is simply referred to as “his wife.” This phrase shows her relationship to him.

Now there was one man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. **His wife** was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

Now King David was old, he had advanced in the days, and they covered him with the garments, but it was not warm enough for him. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

## Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun “his,” and his wife is referred to with the pronoun “she.”

His wife was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah’s wife is referred to by the noun phrase “the wife.”

The angel of Yahweh appeared to the wife and he said to her ... (Judges 13:3a ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant’s name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to by his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

Then Manoah prayed to Yahweh. (Judges 13:8a ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages, people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language’s ways of introducing new participants.
- (2) If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
- (3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language’s ways of introducing new participants.

Then Joseph, who was called Barnabas by the apostles (which is translated as Son of Encouragement), a Levite from Cyprus by birth ... (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) — Starting the sentence with Joseph’s name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.

There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of Encouragement). There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

- (2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

And it happened that when he was praying in a certain place, when he stopped, one of his disciples said to him, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John also taught his disciples.” (Luke 11:1 ULT) — Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who “he” refers to.

It happened when Jesus finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.”

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Joseph's master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20) — Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might prefer the pronoun.

Joseph's master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-pronouns\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 4:2; 4:4](#))



# Irony

## Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."  
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

## Examples From the Bible

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!"** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

## Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
- (2) The irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!  
**You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

- (2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.**" (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot**

**speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
the number of your days is so large!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(**Go back to:** [2 Samuel 6 General Notes](#); [6:20](#); [6:22](#))

## Litotes

### Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no,” “not,” “none,” and “never.” The opposite of “good” is “bad.” Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

### Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

### Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

“Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”

or:

“Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:22](#); [14:18](#); [17:12](#); [17:22](#))

## Merism

### Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am **the alpha and the omega**,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

**Alpha and omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples From the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

### Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

**In all places**, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 14:19](#); [14:25](#); [17:11](#); [22:8](#); [24:2](#); [24:15](#))

# Metaphor

## Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[Simile](#)

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page



in a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

## Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

## Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**”  
The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.”  
(Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

- (1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
- (2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
- (3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
- (4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
- (5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
- (6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
- (7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
- (8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart**." (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay**. You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

**(Go back to: 2 Samuel 1:23; 2:26; 3:1; 3:6; 3:8; 3:29; 5:2; 5:24; 6:7; 7:7; 7:9; 7:10; 7:12; 7:19; Notes; 9:8; Notes; 10:6; 11:25; 11:26; 12:5; 12:8; 12:9; 12:11; 12:12; 12:13; 12:15; 12:27; 12:28; 13:13; 13:27; 13:34; 13:36; 14:7; 14:10; 14:19; 14:22; Notes; 15:6; 15:23; 16:3; 16:4; 16:9; 16:11; 16:21; 17:16; 18:13; 18:19; 18:24; 18:25; 18:28; 19:11; 19:12; 19:13; 19:14; 19:28; 19:41; 20:19; 20:20; 21:17; Notes; 22:2; 22:3; 22:5; 22:8; 22:9; 22:10; 22:11; 22:12; 22:13; 22:15; 22:16; 22:17; 22:21; 22:25; 22:29; 22:32; 22:36; 22:39; 22:47; 23:3; 23:17; 24:1; 24:17; 24:22)**

# Metonymy

## Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”  
or:  
“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment**?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:12](#); [1:14](#); [1:16](#); [1:19](#); [1:20](#); [1:21](#); [2:26](#); [2:31](#); [3:8](#); [3:10](#); [3:12](#); [3:18](#); [3:19](#); [3:21](#); [3:27](#); [3:28](#); [3:29](#); [3:34](#); [4:11](#); [5:8](#); [6:1](#); [6:5](#); [6:12](#); [6:15](#); [6:16](#); [6:18](#); [6:22](#); [7:3](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [7:13](#); [7:23](#); [7:26](#); [7:27](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [8:13](#); [9:3](#); [9:7](#); [9:10](#); [9:12](#); [9:13](#); [10:3](#); [10:17](#); [11:3](#); [11:4](#); [11:8](#); [11:18](#); [11:25](#); [11:27](#); [12:7](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#); [12:25](#); [12:26](#); [12:30](#); [12:31](#); [13:6](#); [13:7](#); [13:30](#); [14:2](#); [14:7](#); [14:9](#); [14:16](#); [14:19](#); [14:22](#); [14:29](#); [14:32](#); [15:3](#); [15:10](#); [15:14](#); [15:25](#); [15:28](#); [16:3](#); [16:4](#); [16:7](#); [16:8](#); [17:3](#); [17:17](#); [17:21](#); [18:1](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#); [18:18](#); [18:19](#); [19:9](#); [19:14](#); [19:28](#); [20:6](#); [20:19](#); [21:9](#); [22:1](#); [22:7](#); [22:31](#); [22:39](#); [22:50](#); [23:2](#); [24:9](#); [24:10](#); [24:14](#); [24:16](#); [24:17](#); [24:25](#))

## Nominal Adjectives

### Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

**He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

**The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

### Examples From the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

### Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]



The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

Blessed are **people who are meek**.

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:19](#); [1:25](#); [5:6](#); [14:2](#))

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

▮ Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

▮ That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

## Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples From the Bible

▮ When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

▮ Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

## Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord*® *Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord*® *Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:31](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:14](#); [3:20](#); [4:4](#); [6:1](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:13](#); [9:10](#); [10:6](#); [10:18](#); [12:6](#); [12:18](#); [15:18](#); [16:1](#); [17:1](#); [18:1](#); [18:3](#); [18:7](#); [18:12](#); [19:17](#); [19:32](#); [19:35](#); [21:16](#); [21:20](#); [23:8](#); [23:13](#); [23:18](#); [23:23](#); [23:24](#); [23:39](#); [24:3](#); [24:8](#); [24:9](#); [24:15](#); [24:24](#))

## Ordinal Numbers

### Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

### Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(**Go back to:** [2 Samuel 1:2](#))

# Parallelism

## Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "**doublet**" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

## Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]



Yahweh sees everything a person does  
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;  
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,  
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.  
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.  
For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)  
Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)  
All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)  
Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

**(Go back to:** [2 Samuel 1:12](#); [1:20](#); [1:22](#); [1:24](#); [3:34](#); [5:2](#); [7:12](#); [7:16](#); [20:1](#); [21:3](#); [22:1](#); [22:3](#); [22:5](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [22:13](#); [22:16](#); [22:17](#); [22:19](#); [22:43](#); [22:47](#); [23:3](#); [23:4](#); [24:17](#))

## Personification

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

### Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

**Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

**Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Apostrophe](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:9](#); [1:22](#); [16:12](#); [18:8](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [22:14](#); [22:15](#); [22:16](#); [22:28](#))

## Quotes within Quotes

### Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are “layers” of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word “I,” the listener needs to know whether “I” refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.

Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes.

They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.

Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

### Examples From the Bible

#### A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, “I, however, was indeed born a citizen.” (Acts 22:28b ULT)

#### Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, “Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, ‘I am the Christ,’ and will lead many astray.” (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

#### A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, “... I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **“He is my brother.”**’” (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

## A quotation with four layers

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: **'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal- Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'**"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

## Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

- (1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
- (2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, "There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar**." (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king. He said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept in custody for the emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.'**"

- (2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, 'During the evenings you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.'" (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'""'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7:7](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#))

## Reflexive Pronouns

### Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: “myself,” “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” “ourselves,” “yourselves,” and “themselves.” Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

### Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

### Examples From the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself**, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

**Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)



## Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

If I should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

“If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)

“Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

**He himself** took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

“**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

**Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

“**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 16:23](#); [17:12](#))

## Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

## Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”**(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

## Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

**This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed ...

**Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

**You should not insult God's high priest!**

**Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)

**I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

**And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)

**How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

**Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

**What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 1:14; Notes; 2:22; 2:26; 3:7; 3:8; 3:12; 3:24; 3:25; 3:33; 3:38; Notes; 4:11; 6:9; 7:5; 7:7; 7:18; 7:20; 7:23; Notes; 9:8; 10:3; 11:3; 11:10; 11:11; 11:20; 11:21; 12:9; 12:18; 12:22; 12:23; 13:4; 13:13; 13:28; 14:13; 15:19; 15:20; 15:27; 15:35; 16:9; 16:10; 16:11; 16:17; 16:19; 18:11; Notes; 19:10; 19:11; 19:12; 19:13; 19:21; 19:22; 19:28; 19:29; 19:34; 19:35; 19:36; 19:41; 19:42; 19:43; 20:19; 22:32; 23:5; 23:17; 23:19; 24:17)

## Simile

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

### Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:18](#); [5:20](#); [11:11](#); [12:3](#); [14:11](#); [14:14](#); [14:17](#); [14:20](#); [15:21](#); [Notes](#); [16:23](#); [17:3](#); [17:8](#); [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [17:12](#); [18:27](#); [18:32](#); [19:3](#); [19:27](#); [21:19](#); [22:34](#); [22:40](#); [22:43](#); [23:4](#); [23:6](#))



## Symbolic Action

### Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

### Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

### Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:2; 1:11; 2:4; 2:7; 3:31; 4:12; 5:3; 13:19; 13:31; 14:4; 14:22; 14:33; 15:1; 15:5; 15:30; 15:32; 18:28; 19:4; 23:1; 24:20](#))

## Synecdoche

### Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Metonymy*

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bit-part2]]

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 1 General Notes; 1:12; 1:16; 2:7; 2:28; 3:13; 3:14; 4:1; 4:9; 6:20; 8:1; 8:2; 8:3; 8:5; 8:9; 10:11; 10:14; 10:17; 10:18; 11:11; 11:14; 12:11; 12:18; 12:26; 12:27; 12:28; 12:29; 13:27; 13:39; 14:10; 14:24; 14:28; 14:32; 15:13; 15:14; 15:32; 15:36; 16:21; 16:23; 17:10; 17:11; 17:13; 18:6; 18:14; 18:15; 18:16; 18:17; 19:5; 19:8; 20:6; 20:14; 20:21; 21:1; 22:35; 22:37; 24:4)

## Textual Variants

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

### Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup> See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup> [1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] [2]

[2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

### Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

- (1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
- (2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” <sup>16</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” <sup>16</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. <sup>16</sup> If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:12](#); [21:19](#))

## Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.



Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 6:5](#); [23:11](#))



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 27**

## Abiathar

### Definition:

Abiathar was a high priest for the nation of Israel during the time of King David.

- When King Saul killed the priests, Abiathar escaped and went to David in the wilderness.
- Abiathar and another high priest named Zadok served David faithfully throughout his reign.
- After David's death, Abiathar helped Adonijah try to become king instead of Solomon.
- Because of this, King Solomon removed Abiathar from the priesthood.

(See also: [Zadok](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [David](#), [Solomon](#), [Adonijah](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- 1 Kings 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:22-23
- 2 Samuel 17:15
- Mark 2:25-26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0054, G00080

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 8:17](#); [15:24](#); [15:27](#); [15:29](#); [15:35](#); [15:36](#); [17:15](#); [19:11](#); [20:25](#))

## Abimelech

### Facts:

Abimelech was a Philistine king over the region of Gerar during the time when Abraham and Isaac were living in the land of Canaan.

- Abraham deceived King Abimelech by telling him that Sarah was his sister rather than his wife.
- Abraham and Abimelech made an agreement regarding ownership of wells at Beersheba.
- Many years later, Isaac also deceived Abimelech and the other men of Gerar by saying that Rebekah was his sister, not his wife.
- King Abimelech rebuked Abraham, and later Isaac, for lying to him.
- Another man by the name of Abimelech was a son of Gideon and a brother of Jotham. Some translations may use a slightly different spelling of his name to make it clear that he is a different person from King Abimelech.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Beersheba](#), Gerar, Gideon, Jotham, [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 11:21
- Genesis 20:3
- Genesis 20:5
- Genesis 21:22
- Genesis 26:11
- Judges 9:54

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0040

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 11:21](#))

# Abner

## Definition:

Abner was a cousin of King Saul in the Old Testament.

- Abner was the chief commander of Saul's army, and introduced young David to Saul after David killed Goliath the giant.
- After King Saul's death, Abner appointed Saul's son Ishbosheth as king in Israel, while David was appointed king in Judah.
- Later, Abner was treacherously killed by David's chief commander, Joab.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:26-28
- 1 Kings 2:5-6
- 1 Kings 2:32
- 1 Samuel 17:55-56
- 2 Samuel 3:22

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0074

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:8; 2:12; 2:14; 2:17; 2:19; 2:20; 2:21; 2:22; 2:23; 2:24; 2:25; 2:26; 2:29; 2:30; 2:31; 3:6; 3:7; 3:8; 3:9; 3:11; 3:12; 3:16; 3:17; 3:19; 3:20; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 3:24; 3:25; 3:26; 3:27; 3:28; 3:30; 3:31; 3:32; 3:33; 3:37; 4:1; 4:12](#))

## Absalom

### Facts:

Absalom was the third son of King David. He was known for his handsome appearance and fiery temperament.

- When Absalom's sister Tamar was raped by their half-brother, Amnon, Absalom made a plan to have Amnon killed.
- After the murder of Amnon, Absalom fled to the region of Geshur (where his mother Maacah was from) and stayed there three years. Then King David sent for him to come back to Jerusalem, but did not allow Absalom to come into his presence for two years.
- Absalom turned some of the people against King David and led a revolt against him.
- David's army fought against Absalom and killed him. David was very grieved when this happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Geshur](#), [Amnon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 1 Kings 1:6
- 2 Samuel 15:2
- 2 Samuel 17:1-4
- 2 Samuel 18:18
- Psalm 3:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0053

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:3](#); [13:1](#); [13:4](#); [13:20](#); [13:22](#); [13:23](#); [13:24](#); [13:25](#); [13:26](#); [13:27](#); [13:28](#); [13:29](#); [13:30](#); [13:32](#); [13:34](#); [13:37](#); [13:38](#); [13:39](#); [14:1](#); [14:21](#); [14:23](#); [14:24](#); [14:25](#); [14:27](#); [14:28](#); [14:29](#); [14:30](#); [14:31](#); [14:32](#); [14:33](#); [15:1](#); [15:2](#); [15:3](#); [15:4](#); [15:6](#); [15:7](#); [15:10](#); [15:11](#); [15:12](#); [15:13](#); [15:14](#); [15:31](#); [15:34](#); [15:37](#); [16:8](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [16:17](#); [16:18](#); [16:20](#); [16:21](#); [16:22](#); [16:23](#); [17:1](#); [17:4](#); [17:5](#); [17:6](#); [17:7](#); [17:9](#); [17:14](#); [17:15](#); [17:18](#); [17:20](#); [17:24](#); [17:25](#); [17:26](#); [18:5](#); [18:9](#); [18:10](#); [18:12](#); [18:14](#); [18:15](#); [18:17](#); [18:18](#); [18:29](#); [18:32](#); [18:33](#); [19:1](#); [19:4](#); [19:6](#); [19:9](#); [19:10](#); [20:6](#))

# Adam

## Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), descendant, Eve, image of God, [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:14
- Genesis 3:17
- Genesis 5:1
- Genesis 11:5
- Luke 3:38
- Romans 5:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:9** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **1:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **2:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **2:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:8** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, G00760

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7:14](#); [7:19](#); [23:3](#); [24:14](#))

## Adonijah

### Definition:

Adonijah was the fourth son of King David.

- Adonijah tried to take over as king of Israel after the deaths of his brothers Absalom and Amnon.
- God, however, had promised that David's son Solomon would be king., so Adonijah's plot was overthrown and Solomon was made king.
- When Adonijah tried a second time to make himself king, Solomon put him to death.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0138

(**Go back to:** [2 Samuel 3:4](#))



## adversary, enemy

### Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:18](#); [4:8](#); [5:20](#); [7:1](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [12:14](#); [18:19](#); [18:32](#); [19:9](#); [22:1](#); [22:18](#); [22:38](#); [22:49](#); [24:13](#); [24:14](#))

## advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

### Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, [wise](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 15:12](#); [16:23](#); [17:7](#); [17:11](#); [17:15](#); [17:21](#))

## afflict, affliction, distress

### Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.
- In some Old Testament contexts, the idea of “afflicting oneself” or “afflicting one's soul” means to abstain from eating food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:6
- Amos 5:12
- Colossians 1:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G23460, G23470, G38040

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 11:25](#))

## alien, foreigner, sojourn

### Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.” To sojourn is to live temporarily as a foreigner.

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- A sojourner is another word for a temporary foreign resident.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:17
- Acts 7:29-30
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0312, H0628, H0776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G02410, G02450, G05260, G09150, G18540, G35810, G39270, G39410

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 15:19](#); [22:45](#); [22:46](#))

## altar

### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 24:18](#); [24:21](#); [24:25](#))

## Ammon, Ammonite

### Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group that lived on the east side of the Jordan River across from the Israelites.

- The book of Genesis reports that the Ammonite nation was descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.
- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [Jordan River](#), Lot)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:2
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 2:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5983, H5984, H5985

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 23:37](#))

## Amnon

### Facts:

Amnon was the oldest son of King David. His mother was King David's wife Ahinoam.

- Amnon raped his half-sister Tamar, who was also Absalom's sister.
- Because of this, Absalom plotted against Amnon and had him killed.

(See also: [David](#), [Absalom](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Samuel 13:2
- 2 Samuel 13:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0550

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:2](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:6](#); [13:7](#); [13:8](#); [13:9](#); [13:10](#); [13:15](#); [13:20](#); [13:22](#); [13:26](#); [13:27](#); [13:28](#); [13:29](#); [13:32](#); [13:33](#); [13:39](#))

## Amorite

### Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who inhabited the land of Canaan and lived on both sides of the Jordan River.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The book of Genesis reports that the Amorites were descended from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.
- The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

### Bible References:

- Amos 2:9
- Ezekiel 16:3
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 9:10

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:8** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:9** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0567,

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 21:2](#))



## ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:32](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:29](#); [7:12](#); [7:14](#); [9:7](#); [10:2](#); [10:3](#); [13:5](#); [14:9](#); [15:34](#); [16:3](#); [16:19](#); [16:21](#); [16:22](#); [17:8](#); [17:10](#); [17:23](#); [19:28](#); [19:37](#); [21:14](#); [24:17](#))

## anoint, anointed, anointing

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, [consecrate](#), high priest, King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 12:20](#))

## appoint, appointed

### Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:9](#); [2:30](#); [3:8](#); [7:10](#); [8:6](#); [8:14](#); [12:20](#); [12:31](#); [13:19](#); [14:3](#); [17:17](#); [18:1](#); [20:4](#); [20:11](#); [20:12](#); [22:34](#); [23:23](#); [24:2](#))

## Arabah

### Facts:

The Old Testament term “Arabah” often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The “Sea of the Arabah” could also be translated as “sea located in the Arabah desert region.” This sea is often referred to as the “Salt Sea” or the “Dead Sea.”
- The term “arabah” can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [desert](#), Sea of Reeds, [Jordan River](#), Canaan, Salt Sea, [Egypt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- 2 Samuel 2:29
- Jeremiah 2:4-6
- Job 24:5-7
- Zechariah 14:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1026, H6160

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 4:7](#))

## ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh

### Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, [covenant](#), atonement, holy place, [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 9:5
- Judges 20:27
- Numbers 7:89
- Revelation 11:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H1285, H3068

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:4](#); [6:6](#); [6:7](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:11](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#); [6:15](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [7:2](#); [11:11](#); [15:24](#); [15:25](#); [15:29](#))

## Ashkelon

### Facts:

In Bible times, Ashkelon was a major Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. It still exists in Israel today.

- Ashkelon was one of the five most important Philistine cities, along with Ashdod, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The Israelites did not completely conquer the people of Ashkelon, even though the kingdom of Judah occupied its hill country.
- Ashkelon remained occupied by the Philistines for hundreds of years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Canaan, Ekron, Gath, Gaza, [Philistines](#), Mediterranean)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:17-18
- Amos 1:8
- Jeremiah 25:19-21
- Joshua 13:2-3
- Judges 1:18-19
- Zechariah 9:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0831

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 1:20](#))

## assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

### Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

### New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 12:28](#); [14:14](#); [17:11](#); [17:13](#); [23:9](#))



## avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

### Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [just](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 18:47
- Romans 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G15560, G15570, G15580, G37090

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 4 General Notes](#))

## barley

### Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: grain, [thresh](#), [wheat](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 7:14
- Numbers 5:15
- Revelation 6:6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8184, G29150, G29160

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 14:30](#); [21:9](#))

## Bathsheba

### Facts:

Bathsheba was the wife of Uriah, a soldier in King David's army. After Uriah's death, she became the wife of David, and the mother of Solomon.

- David committed adultery with Bathsheba while she was married to Uriah.
- When Bathsheba became pregnant with David's child, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle.
- David then married Bathsheba and she gave birth to their child.
- God punished David for his sin by causing the child to die several days after he was born.
- Later, Bathsheba gave birth to another son, Solomon, who grew up to become king after David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:4-5
- 1 Kings 1:11
- 2 Samuel 11:3
- Psalm 51:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:10** One day, when all of David's soldiers were away from home fighting battles, he got up from an afternoon nap and saw a beautiful woman bathing. Her name was **Bathsheba**.
- **17:11** A short time later **Bathsheba** sent a message to David saying that she was pregnant.
- **17:12** **Bathsheba's** husband, a man named Uriah, was one of David's best soldiers.
- **17:13** After Uriah was killed, David married **Bathsheba**.
- **17:14** Later, David and **Bathsheba** had another son, and they named him Solomon.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1339

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 11:3; 12:24](#))

## Beersheba

### Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means “well of the oath.” It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech’s men for seizing control of one of Abraham’s wells.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abimelech](#), Abraham, Hagar, Ishmael, [Jerusalem](#), [oath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 3:20
- 2 Samuel 17:11
- Genesis 21:14
- Genesis 21:31
- Genesis 46:1
- Nehemiah 11:30

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0884

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:10](#); [17:11](#); [24:2](#); [24:7](#); [24:15](#))

## believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

### Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

#### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

#### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

#### 3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

#### 4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”

- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, [trust](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

(**Go back to:** [2 Samuel 21 General Notes](#))

## Benaiah

### Definition:

Benaiah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- Benaiah son of Jehoiada was one of David's mighty men. He was a skilled warrior and was put in charge of David's bodyguards.
- When Solomon was being made king, Benaiah helped him overthrow his enemies. He eventually became commander of the Israelite army.
- Other men in the Old Testament named Benaiah include three Levites: a priest, a musician, and a descendant of Asaph.

(See also: [Asaph](#), [Jehoiada](#), [Levite](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:36
- 1 Kings 1:8
- 2 Samuel 23:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1141

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 8:18](#); [20:23](#); [23:20](#); [23:22](#); [23:30](#))



## Benjamin, Benjaminite

### Facts:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Rachel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:9](#); [2:15](#); [2:25](#); [2:31](#); [3:19](#); [4:2](#); [16:11](#); [19:16](#); [19:17](#); [21:14](#); [23:29](#))

## bind, bond, bound

### Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 11:26](#); [21:12](#))

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”

- **4:7** Melchizedek **ble<sup>s</sup>ed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **ble<sup>s</sup>s** Abram."
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **ble<sup>s</sup>sing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **ble<sup>s</sup>ed** him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:5](#); [6:11](#); [6:12](#); [6:18](#); [7:29](#); [13:25](#); [14:22](#); [18:28](#); [19:39](#); [21:3](#); [22:47](#))

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; flesh; [life](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:16](#); [4:11](#); [16:8](#))

## bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:2](#); [2:16](#); [2:23](#); [3:29](#); [4:4](#); [9:6](#); [11:17](#); [14:4](#); [14:22](#); [20:8](#); [21:9](#); [21:22](#); [22:39](#); [22:40](#))

## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), unleavened bread, yeast)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:29](#); [3:35](#); [6:19](#); [9:7](#); [9:10](#); [12:17](#); [12:20](#); [12:21](#); [13:5](#); [16:1](#))



## bronze

### Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 8:8](#); [8:10](#); [21:16](#))

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:26](#); [2:22](#); [2:26](#); [2:27](#); [3:8](#); [3:27](#); [3:30](#); [4:6](#); [4:9](#); [10:10](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:7](#); [13:8](#); [13:10](#); [13:12](#); [13:20](#); [13:26](#); [13:32](#); [14:7](#); [15:20](#); [18:2](#); [19:12](#); [19:41](#); [20:9](#); [20:10](#); [21:21](#); [23:18](#); [23:24](#))

## burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

### Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:3
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G00040, G09160, G09220, G23470, G25990, G26550, G54130

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 6:20](#); [6:22](#); [13:25](#); [14:26](#); [23:19](#); [23:23](#))

## burnt offering, offering by fire

### Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), atonement, [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 3:5
- Mark 12:33

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G36460

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 6:17](#); [24:24](#); [24:25](#))

## bury, buried, burial

### Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:4](#))

## call, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 5:20](#); [6:2](#); [15:11](#); [17:5](#); [22:4](#); [22:7](#))

## cedar, cedarwood

### Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, pure, [sacrifice](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 7:1-2
- Isaiah 2:13
- Zechariah 11:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0730

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 5:11](#); [7:2](#); [7:7](#))



## chariot, charioteers

### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 8:29
- Acts 8:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G07160, G44800

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 15:1](#))

## cherub

### Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [angel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:6
- 1 Kings 6:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Genesis 3:22-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G55020

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 6:2; 22:11](#))

## chief, leader

### Definition:

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: [head](#), chief priests, [priest](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 1:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:2
- Psalm 4:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G07490, G07500, G07540, G44100, G44130, G55060

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 15:32](#); [18:5](#); [23:19](#))

## children, child, offspring

### Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), beloved)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G07300, G08150, G10250, G10640, G10810, G10850, G14710, G34390, G35150, G35160, G38080, G38120, G38130, G38160, G50400, G50410, G50420, G50430, G50440, G52060, G52070, G53880

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 12:15](#); [12:18](#); [12:19](#); [12:21](#); [12:22](#))

## clean, wash

### Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G01670, G01690, G25110, G25120, G25130, G28390, G28400, G33940, G36890

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 11:8](#); [12:20](#))

## comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

### Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: encourage, Holy Spirit)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 1:4
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G03020, G38700, G38740, G38750, G38880, G38900, G39310

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 10:3](#); [13:39](#))



## command, commandment

### Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:12](#); [2:23](#); [3:26](#); [4:12](#); [5:25](#); [6:20](#); [7:7](#); [7:11](#); [9:11](#); [10:8](#); [10:16](#); [11:8](#); [11:13](#); [11:17](#); [11:19](#); [11:23](#); [13:9](#); [13:18](#); [13:28](#); [13:29](#); [14:8](#); [14:19](#); [15:16](#); [15:17](#); [17:14](#); [17:23](#); [18:5](#); [18:6](#); [18:12](#); [20:7](#); [21:14](#); [22:20](#); [22:49](#); [24:4](#); [24:7](#); [24:19](#); [24:20](#))

## condemn, condemned, condemnation

### Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [punish](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:20
- Job 9:29
- John 5:24
- Luke 6:37
- Matthew 12:7
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 34:22
- Romans 5:16

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G01760, G08430, G26070, G26130, G26310, G26320, G26330, G29170, G29190, G29200, G52720, G60480

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 4 General Notes](#))

## confirm, confirmation, legal

### Definition:

The term “confirm” refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 6:16-18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G09500, G09510, G33150, G49720

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 12:17](#))

## consecrate, consecrated, consecration

### Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), pure, sanctify)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 4:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G14570, G50480

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 8:11](#); [11:4](#))

## consume, devour

### Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

### Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Jeremiah 3:23-25
- Job 7:9
- Numbers 11:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G03550, G26180, G26540, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 21:5](#); [22:38](#))

## court, courtyard

### Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), [judge](#), [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 3:26
- Psalms 65:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G08330, G42590

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 17:18](#))

## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [Introduction to 2 Samuel](#); [2 Samuel 3:12](#); [3:13](#); [3:21](#); [5:3](#); [Notes](#); [15:24](#); [Notes](#); [23:5](#))



## covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

### Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as “covenant faithfulness” was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms “covenant” and “faithfulness” are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: “faithful love;” “loyal, committed love;” or “loving dependability.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), people of God, [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezra 3:11
- Numbers 14:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2617

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:6](#); [3:8](#); [7:15](#); [9:1](#); [9:3](#); [9:7](#); [10:2](#); [15:20](#); [16:17](#); [22:51](#))

## cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

### Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: yoke)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 17:29](#))

## **cry, cry out, outcry**

### **Definition:**

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- It can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#), [pray](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

(**Go back to:** [2 Samuel 13:19](#); [19:4](#))

## curse, cursed, cursing

### Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- **2:11** “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **4:4** “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 6:22](#); [16:5](#); [16:11](#); [16:13](#))

## curtain

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: holy place, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 4:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 4:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G26650

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7:2](#); [17:19](#))

## cut off, cut down

### Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:6
- Proverbs 23:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G06090, G08510, G15810

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:12](#); [3:13](#); [3:21](#); [3:29](#); [5:3](#); [7:9](#); [10:4](#); [20:22](#))

## darkness

### Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), light, [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:6
- 1 John 2:8
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 1:13
- Isaiah 5:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 8:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0652, H0653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G22170, G46520, G46530, G46550, G46560

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 22:10](#); [22:12](#); [22:29](#))



## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:1; 1:2; 1:3; 1:4; 1:5; 1:11; 1:13; 1:14; 1:15; 1:16; 1:17; 2:1; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 2:10; 2:11; 2:13; 2:15; 2:17; 2:30; 2:31; 3:1; 3:5; 3:6; 3:8; 3:10; 3:12; 3:14; 3:17; 3:18; 3:19; 3:20; 3:21; 3:22; 3:26; 3:28; 3:31; 3:35; 4:8; 4:9;](#)

4:12; 5:1; 5:3; 5:4; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:9; 5:10; 5:11; 5:12; 5:13; 5:17; 5:19; 5:20; 5:21; 5:23; 5:25; 6:1; 6:2; 6:9; 6:10; 6:12;  
6:16; 6:17; 6:18; 6:20; 6:21; 7:5; 7:17; 7:18; 7:20; 7:26; 8:1; 8:3; 8:4; 8:5; 8:6; 8:7; 8:8; 8:9; 8:10; 8:11; 8:13; 8:14; 8:15;  
8:18; 9:1; 9:2; 9:5; 9:6; 9:7; 10:2; 10:3; 10:4; 10:7; 10:17; 10:18; 11:1; 11:2; 11:3; 11:4; 11:6; 11:7; 11:8; 11:10; 11:11;  
11:12; 11:13; 11:14; 11:17; 11:23; 11:25; 11:27; 12:1; 12:5; 12:7; 12:13; 12:16; 12:18; 12:19; 12:20; 12:24; 12:27; 12:29;  
12:30; 12:31; 13:1; 13:3; 13:7; 13:21; 13:30; 13:32; 13:39; 15:12; 15:13; 15:14; 15:22; 15:31; 15:32; 15:33; 15:37; 16:5;  
16:6; 16:10; 16:11; 16:13; 16:16; 17:1; 17:17; 17:21; 17:22; 17:27; 18:1; 18:2; 18:7; 18:9; 19:11; 19:16; 19:22; 19:41; 20:2;  
20:3; 20:6; 21:1; 21:3; 21:7; 21:12; 21:15; 21:16; 21:17; 21:21; 21:22; 22:1; 23:1; 23:9; 23:13; 23:15; 23:16; 23:23; 24:1;  
24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 24:13; 24:14; 24:17; 24:18; 24:19; 24:21; 24:22; 24:24; 24:25)

## deceive, lie, deception, illusions

### Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a “lie.” The act of deceiving someone is called “lying,” “deceit,” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To “lie” is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 22:45](#))

## declare, proclaim, announce

### Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:7](#); [1:15](#); [2:16](#); [2:26](#); [5:9](#); [6:8](#); [9:2](#); [9:9](#); [11:13](#); [12:24](#); [12:25](#); [12:28](#); [13:17](#); [13:23](#); [14:33](#); [15:2](#); [18:18](#); [18:25](#); [18:26](#); [18:28](#); [20:16](#); [21:2](#))

# delight

## Definition:

The term “delight” means great pleasure or great joy.

- To “delight in” something means to “to take pleasure in” or “take joy in” or “be happy about” it. If a person “delights in” something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called “delightful.”
- The expression “my delight is in the law of Yahweh” could be translated as “the law of Yahweh gives me great joy” or “I love to obey the laws of Yahweh” or “I am happy when I obey Yahweh’s commands.”
- The phrases “take no delight in” and “have no delight in” could be translated as “not at all pleased by” or “not happy about.”
- The phrase “delight himself in” means “he enjoys doing” something or “he is very happy about” something or someone.
- The term “delights” refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as “pleasures” or “things that give joy.”
- An expression such as “I delight to do your will” could also be translated as “I enjoy doing your will” or “I am very happy when I obey you.”

## Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:30
- Psalm 1:2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Songs 1:3

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 15:26](#); [20:11](#); [22:20](#); [24:3](#))

## deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

### Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:18](#); [8:6](#); [8:14](#); [14:4](#); [15:14](#); [20:6](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:28](#); [22:42](#); [23:12](#))

## desert, wilderness

### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 16:2](#); [17:29](#))

## destroy, destruction, annihilate

### Definition:

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:27](#); [14:16](#))



## devour

### Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: [consume](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:26](#); [9:7](#); [9:10](#); [9:11](#); [9:13](#); [11:13](#); [11:25](#); [12:3](#); [12:20](#); [12:21](#); [13:5](#); [18:8](#); [19:35](#); [19:42](#); [22:9](#); [22:39](#))

# die, dead, deadly, death

## Definition:

The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

### 1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), faith, [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 1:4; 1:9; 1:10; 1:15; 1:23; 2:23; 3:27; 3:30; 3:37; 4:7; 4:11; 6:7; 8:2; 9:8; 10:1; 10:18; 11:15; 11:17; 11:21; 11:24; 12:9; 12:18; 13:28; 14:5; 14:6; 14:7; 14:32; 16:9; 17:23; 18:15; 19:37; 20:10; 20:19; 21:4; 21:17; 24:15)

## dominion

### Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as “rule over” or “manage.”

(See also: authority, power)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:10-11
- Colossians 1:13
- Jude 1:25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G26340, G29040, G29610, G29630

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 23:3](#))

## donkey, mule

### Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:32-34
- 1 Samuel 9:4
- 2 Kings 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G36780, G36880, G52680

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 16:1](#); [16:2](#); [17:23](#); [19:26](#))

## earth, land

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, [heaven](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:2; 2:22; 3:12; 4:11; 5:6; 8:2; 10:2; 12:16; 12:17; 13:31; 14:4; 14:11; 14:14; 14:22; 14:33; 15:23; 17:26; 18:8; 18:9; 18:11; 18:28; 19:9; 20:10; 22:8; 22:43; 24:6; 24:8; 24:20](#))

## Egypt, Egyptian

### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *\_Egypt\_* to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7:6](#); [7:23](#); [23:21](#))

## elder, older, old

### Definition:

The term “elder” or “older” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “older men” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:17](#); [5:3](#); [12:17](#); [17:4](#); [17:15](#); [19:11](#))



## Eleazar

### Facts:

Eleazar was the name of several men in the Bible.

Eleazar was the third son of Moses' brother Aaron. After Aaron died, Eleazar became the high priest in Israel.

Eleazar was also the name of one of David's "mighty men."

Another Eleazar was one of Jesus' ancestors.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aaron, high priest, [David](#), [mighty](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:3
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 34:16-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0499, G16480

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 23:9](#))

## ephod

### Definition:

An ephod was an apron-like garment worn by the Israelite priests. It had two parts, front and back, that were joined together at the shoulders and tied around the waist with a cloth belt.

- One kind of ephod was made of plain linen and was worn by the ordinary priests.
- The ephod worn by the high priest was specially embroidered with gold, blue, purple, and red yarn.
- The breastpiece of the high priest was attached to the front of the ephod. Behind the breastpiece were stored the Urim and Thummim, which were stones used for asking God what his will was in certain matters.
- The judge Gideon foolishly made an ephod out of gold and it became something that the Israelites worshiped as an idol.

(See also: [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:18-19
- Exodus 28:4-5
- Hosea 3:4
- Judges 8:27
- Leviticus 8:7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0641, H0642, H0646

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 6:14](#))

## Ephraim, Ephraimite

### Facts:

Ephraim was the younger son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Ephraim sounds like the Hebrew word meaning “to make fruitful.”
- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel).

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Joseph](#), Manasseh, kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0669, H0673, G21870

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:9](#); [13:23](#); [18:6](#); [20:21](#))

## eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.

- **45:2** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:39](#); [12:9](#); [12:11](#); [12:18](#); [13:16](#); [15:14](#); [16:8](#); [17:14](#); [19:7](#); [22:22](#); [24:16](#))

## ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7:8](#); [24:17](#))



## exalt, exalted, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), glory, boast, [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 22:47](#))

## exile, exiled

### Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: Babylon, Judah)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 2:25-26
- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G39270

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 6:20](#); [7:27](#); [15:19](#); [22:16](#))

## face, facial

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:22](#); [2:24](#); [3:13](#); [9:6](#); [10:9](#); [11:11](#); [11:15](#); [14:7](#); [14:20](#); [14:22](#); [14:24](#); [14:28](#); [14:32](#); [15:18](#); [15:23](#); [17:11](#); [17:19](#); [18:8](#); [19:4](#); [19:5](#); [21:1](#))

## faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 4:4](#); [7:28](#); [20:19](#))

## family, household

### Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 1:21
- Joshua 2:12-13
- Luke 2:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0251, H0272, H0504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G10850, G36140, G36240, G39650

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 16:5](#))

# famine

## Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 21:1](#); [24:13](#))



## fast, fasting

### Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:3
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 3:4-5
- Luke 5:34
- Mark 2:19
- Matthew 6:18
- Matthew 9:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:1** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:8** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G35210, G35220

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:12](#); [12:16](#); [12:21](#); [12:22](#); [12:23](#))

## favor, favorable, favoritism

### Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:7
- 2 Corinthians 1:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G11840, G36850, G43800, G43820, G54850, G54860

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 14:22](#); [15:25](#); [16:4](#); [18:4](#))

## fear, afraid, frighten

### Definition:

The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere;” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: awe, [Yahweh](#), [Lord](#), marvel, power)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:14](#); [6:9](#); [7:23](#); [9:7](#); [10:19](#); [12:18](#); [13:28](#); [14:15](#); [23:3](#))

## feast, feasting

### Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:20](#); [24:15](#))

## fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: pure)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 14:30](#); [14:31](#); [22:9](#); [22:13](#))

## firstborn

### Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 2:6-7
- Revelation 1:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G44160, G52070

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:2](#))

## flock, herd

### Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

### Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: [goat](#), [cow](#), [pig](#), [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 12:2](#); [17:29](#))

## fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), Christ, minister, [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 9 General Notes](#))



## Gad

### Facts:

Gad was Jacob's seventh son. He was Zilpah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Gad" or "Gad" or "Gad."
- The name Gad is similar to the Hebrew word for "good fortune."
- The tribe of Gad settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea. This was to the north of Reuben and south of half of the tribe of Manasseh. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Gad" refers to the land given to the tribe of Gad.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Zilpah)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 1:12
- Joshua 21:38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G10450

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 24:11](#); [24:13](#); [24:14](#); [24:18](#); [24:19](#))

## gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Definition:

The term “gate” refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A “bar” for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:27](#); [10:8](#); [11:23](#); [15:2](#); [18:4](#); [18:24](#); [18:26](#); [18:33](#); [19:8](#); [23:15](#); [23:16](#))

## Geshur, Geshurites

### Definition:

During the time of King David, Geshur was a small kingdom located on the east side of the Sea of Galilee between the countries of Israel and Aram.

- King David married Maacah, the daughter of Geshur's king, and she bore him a son, Absalom.
- After murdering his half-brother Amnon, Absalom fled northeast from Jerusalem to Geshur, a distance of about 140 kilometers. He stayed there three years.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [Amnon](#), Aram, Sea of Galilee)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:23
- 2 Samuel 3:2-3
- Deuteronomy 3:14
- Joshua 12:3-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1650

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:3](#); [13:37](#); [13:38](#); [14:23](#); [14:32](#); [15:8](#))

## Gibeon, Gibeonite

### Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: [Gilgal](#), [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:29
- 1 Kings 3:4-5
- 2 Samuel 2:12-13
- Joshua 9:3-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.
- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.
- **15:8** So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1391, H1393

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:12](#); [2:13](#); [2:24](#); [21:1](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#); [21:9](#))

## Gilead, Gileadite

### Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:22
- 1 Samuel 11:1
- Amos 1:3
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:9](#); [17:26](#); [17:27](#); [19:31](#); [24:6](#))

## Gilgal

### Facts:

Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

- At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
- Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
- There were also several other places called “Gilgal” in the Old Testament.
- The word “gilgal” means “circle of stones,” perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.
- In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as “the gilgal.” This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Elijah](#), [Elisha](#), [Jericho](#), [Jordan River](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 7:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:1-2
- Hosea 4:15
- Judges 2:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1537

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 19:15](#); [19:40](#))

## **gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around**

### **Definition:**

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or “wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 1:13
- Job 38:3

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H0640, H0247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G03280, G12410, G40240

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:34](#); [6:14](#); [20:8](#); [21:16](#))

## God

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12



- Psalms 47:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 2:27; 3:9; 3:35; 5:10; 6:2; 6:3; 6:4; 6:6; 6:7; 6:12; 7:2; 7:22; 7:23; 7:24; 7:25; 7:26; 7:27; 7:28; 9:3; 10:12; 12:7; 12:16; 14:11; 14:13; 14:14; 14:16; 14:17; 14:20; 15:24; 15:25; 15:29; 15:32; 16:23; 18:28; 19:13; 19:27; 21:14; 22:3; 22:7; 22:22; 22:30; 22:31; 22:32; 22:33; 22:47; 22:48; 23:1; 23:3; 24:3; 24:23; 24:24)

## gold, golden

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), false god, [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:24](#); [8:7](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [12:30](#); [21:4](#))

## Goliath

### Facts:

Goliath was a very tall and very large soldier in the army of the Philistines who was killed by David.

- Goliath was between two and three meters tall. He is often referred to as a giant because of his great size.
- Although Goliath had better weapons and was much bigger than David, God gave David the strength and ability to defeat Goliath.
- The Israelites were declared victorious over the Philistines as a result of David's victory over Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:4-5
- 1 Samuel 17:4-5
- 1 Samuel 21:8-9
- 1 Samuel 22:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1555

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 21:19](#))

## good, right, pleasant, better, best

### Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [prosper](#), [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:13](#); [3:19](#); [3:36](#); [10:12](#); [11:2](#); [13:22](#); [14:32](#); [15:3](#); [15:26](#); [16:12](#); [17:7](#); [17:14](#); [18:3](#); [18:27](#); [19:18](#); [19:27](#); [19:35](#); [19:37](#); [19:38](#); [24:22](#))

## grace, gracious

### Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 21 General Notes](#))

## grain offering

### Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering, [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 2:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 8:2](#); [8:6](#))

## grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

### Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:32](#); [19:37](#))



## hand

### Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

### Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: power, right hand, honor, [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 1:14; 2:7; 3:8; 3:12; 3:18; 3:34; 4:1; 4:11; 4:12; 5:19; 8:1; 8:3; 8:10; 10:2; 10:10; 11:14; 12:7; 12:25; 13:5; 13:6; 13:10; 13:19; 14:16; 14:25; 14:30; 15:2; 15:5; 15:18; 15:36; 16:8; 16:21; 17:2; 18:2; 18:4; 18:12; 18:18; 18:19; 18:28; 18:31; 19:9; 19:43; 20:9; 20:10; 20:21; 21:9; 21:20; 21:22; 22:1; 22:21; 22:35; 23:6; 23:10; 23:21; 24:14; 24:16; 24:17)

## hang, hung

### Definition:

The term “hang” means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- In modern times, death by hanging is usually done by tying a rope around a person’s neck and suspending him from an elevated object until he dies. This elevated object can be any number of things, such as a tree or a gallows, that is, a platform built specifically for the purpose of hanging a person in order to kill him.
- In biblical times, however, ancient cultures may not have killed people by hanging in precisely the same way. For example, Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross (sometimes called a “tree”), but there was nothing around his neck. The soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- Some ancient cultures “hung” a person by impaling him on a wooden pole in such a way that he was suspended above the ground so that he could not escape. The person would be left there until he died.
- For many references to death by “hanging” in the Bible, the specific means of death is unknown.

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 3:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2614, H3363, H8518, G05190

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 4:12](#); [18:10](#); [21:12](#))

## **harp, harpist**

### **Definition:**

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), [fir](#), [psalm](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 5:23-24
- Daniel 3:5
- Psalm 33:1-3
- Revelation 5:8

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5059, H7030, G27880, G27890, G27900

(**Go back to:** [2 Samuel 6:5](#))

## harvest, reap

### Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: firstfruits, festival, good news)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 9:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 5:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9
- Matthew 9:38
- Ruth 1:22
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G02700, G23250, G23260, G23270

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 21:9](#); [21:10](#); [23:13](#))

## head

### Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: [chief](#), [grain](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:2](#); [1:10](#); [1:16](#); [2:16](#); [2:25](#); [3:29](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#); [4:12](#); [5:24](#); [12:30](#); [13:19](#); [14:26](#); [15:30](#); [15:32](#); [16:9](#); [18:9](#); [20:21](#); [20:22](#); [23:8](#); [23:13](#); [23:18](#))

## heart

### Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 6:16](#); [7:27](#); [13:20](#); [13:28](#); [13:33](#); [14:1](#); [14:7](#); [15:6](#); [15:13](#); [17:10](#); [18:3](#); [18:13](#); [18:14](#); [19:7](#); [19:14](#); [19:19](#); [23:17](#); [24:10](#))

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720



(Go back to: [2 Samuel 18:9](#); [21:10](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [22:14](#))

## Hittite

### Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, [foreigner](#), Ham, [mighty](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:8
- Numbers 13:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 11:3](#); [11:6](#); [11:17](#); [11:21](#); [11:24](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [23:39](#))

## Hivite

### Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Hamor, Noah, Shechem)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 34:2
- Joshua 9:1-2
- Judges 3:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 24:7](#))

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, [consecrate](#), sanctify, set apart)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 6 General Notes](#))

## honey, honeycomb

### Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, [Philistines](#), Samson)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 17:29](#))

## horse, warhorse, horseback

### Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for war and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.

(See also: [chariot](#), [donkey](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:4
- 2 Kings 2:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 6:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G24620

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 6:3](#); [13:29](#); [15:1](#); [19:26](#); [22:11](#))

## house of God, Yahweh's house

### Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house)" refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped" (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people").
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: people of God, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 5:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 2:26
- Matthew 12:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G23160, G36240

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7 General Notes](#))



## house, household

### Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term “house” means “household,” referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term “house” means “family” or “descendants,” referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshipped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: descendant, [house of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), house of David, kingdom of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:12](#); [2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:7](#); [2:10](#); [2:11](#); [3:1](#); [3:6](#); [3:8](#); [3:10](#); [3:19](#); [3:29](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:11](#); [6:3](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:10](#); [6:11](#); [6:12](#); [6:15](#); [6:19](#); [6:20](#); [6:21](#); [7:5](#); [7:7](#); [7:11](#); [7:13](#); [7:16](#); [7:18](#); [7:19](#); [7:25](#); [7:26](#); [7:27](#); [7:29](#); [9:1](#); [9:3](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [9:9](#); [9:12](#); [11:2](#); [11:4](#); [11:8](#); [11:9](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#); [11:13](#); [11:27](#); [12:8](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:15](#); [12:17](#); [12:20](#); [13:7](#); [13:8](#); [13:20](#); [14:8](#); [14:9](#); [14:24](#); [14:31](#); [15:16](#); [15:35](#); [16:2](#); [16:3](#); [16:5](#); [16:8](#); [16:21](#); [17:18](#); [17:20](#); [17:23](#); [19:5](#); [19:11](#); [19:17](#); [19:18](#); [19:20](#); [19:28](#); [19:30](#); [19:41](#); [20:3](#); [21:1](#); [21:4](#); [23:5](#))

## humble, humbled, humility

### Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- James 1:21
- James 3:13
- James 4:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:4
- Matthew 23:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G08580, G42360, G42390, G42400, G50110, G50120, G50130, G53910

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7:10](#))

## inherit, inheritance, heir

### Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land, possess)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 20:1](#); [20:19](#); [21:3](#))

## iniquity

### Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), transgress, trespass)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 3:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:8](#); [14:32](#); [19:19](#); [22:24](#); [24:10](#))

## innocent

### Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:4
- 1 Samuel 19:5
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:7
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 9:23
- Romans 16:18

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:4** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:8** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G01210

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:28](#); [14:9](#))

## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means “He struggles with God.”
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “sons of Israel” or the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *\_Israel\_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave \_Israel\_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *\_Israel\_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: Introduction to 2 Samuel; 2 Samuel 1:3; 1:12; 1:19; 1:24; 2:9; 2:10; 2:17; 2:28; 3:10; 3:12; 3:17; 3:18; 3:19; 3:21; 3:37; 3:38; 4:1; 5:1; 5:2; 5:3; 5:5; 5:12; 5:17; 6:1; 6:5; 6:15; 6:19; 6:20; 6:21; 7:6; 7:7; 7:8; 7:10; 7:11; 7:24; 7:26; 7:27; 8:15; 10:9; 10:15; 10:17; 10:18; 10:19; 11:1; 12:7; 12:8; 12:12; 13:12; 13:13; 14:25; 15:2; 15:6; 15:10; 15:13; 16:3; 16:15; 16:18; 16:21; 16:22; 17:4; 17:10; 17:11; 17:13; 17:14; 17:15; 17:24; 17:26; 18:6; 18:7; 18:16; 18:17; 19:9; 19:11; 19:22; 19:40; 19:41; 19:42; 19:43; 20:1; 20:2; 20:14; 20:19; 20:23; 21:2; 21:4; 21:5; 21:15; 21:17; 21:21; 23:1; 23:3; 23:9; 24:1; 24:2; 24:4; 24:9; 24:15; 24:25)



## Jacob, Israel

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), twelve tribes of Israel, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, Bilhah, [deceive](#), Esau, Isaac, Rebekah, Laban)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 23:1](#))

## Jebus, Jebusite

### Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Ham, [Jerusalem](#), Melchizedek)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:14
- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Judges 1:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 5:6](#); [24:16](#); [24:18](#))

## Jehoiada

### Facts:

Jehoiada was a priest who helped hide and protect King Ahaziah's son Joash until he was old enough to be declared king.

- Jehoiada arranged for hundreds of bodyguards to protect young Joash as he was proclaimed king by the people in the temple.
- Jehoiada led the people in getting rid of all the altars of the false god Baal.
- For the rest of his life, Jehoiada the priest advised King Joash to help him obey God and rule the people wisely.
- Another man named Jehoiada was the father of Benaiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahaziah, Baal, [Benaiah](#), Joash)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 11:4
- 2 Kings 12:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3077

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 8:18](#); [20:23](#); [23:20](#); [23:22](#))

# Jehoshaphat

## Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a “recorder” for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), false god, [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [Solomon](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10-12
- 1 Kings 4:17
- 2 Chronicles 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:17
- 2 Samuel 8:15-18
- Matthew 1:7-8

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3092, G24980

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 8:16](#); [20:24](#))

# Jericho

## Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, [Jordan River](#), Joshua, [miracle](#), Salt Sea)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:78
- Joshua 2:1-3
- Joshua 7:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:1** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:5** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G24100

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 10:5](#))

# Jerusalem

## Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, [David](#), [Jebusites](#), Jesus, [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

## Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 5:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:13](#); [5:14](#); [8:7](#); [9:13](#); [10:14](#); [11:1](#); [11:12](#); [12:31](#); [14:23](#); [14:28](#); [15:8](#); [15:11](#); [15:14](#); [15:29](#); [15:37](#); [16:3](#); [16:15](#); [17:20](#); [19:19](#); [19:25](#); [19:33](#); [19:34](#); [20:2](#); [20:3](#); [20:7](#); [20:22](#); [24:8](#); [24:16](#))

# Jesse

## Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an “Ephrathite,” which means he was from the region of Ephrathah. The town of Bethlehem was located in the region of Ephrathah.
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a “shoot” or “branch” that would come from the “root of Jesse” and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, Boaz, descendant, Jesus, [king](#), [prophet](#), Ruth, twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 3:32
- Matthew 1:4-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G24210

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 20:1](#); [23:1](#))



# Joab

## Definition:

Joab was an important military leader for King David throughout David's entire reign.

- Before David became king, Joab had already been one of his loyal followers.
- Later, during David's reign as king over Israel, Joab became the commander of King David's army.
- Joab was also King David's nephew, since his mother was one of David's sisters.
- When David's son Absalom betrayed him by trying to take over his kingship, Joab killed Absalom in order to protect the king.
- Joab was a very aggressive fighter and killed many people who were enemies of Israel.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [David](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:16-17
- 1 Kings 1:7
- 1 Samuel 26:6-8
- 2 Samuel 2:18
- Nehemiah 7:11

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3097

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 2:13; 2:14; 2:18; 2:22; 2:24; 2:26; 2:27; 2:28; 2:30; 2:32; 3:22; 3:23; 3:24; 3:26; 3:27; 3:29; 3:30; 3:31; 8:16; 10:7; 10:9; 10:13; 10:14; 11:1; 11:6; 11:7; 11:11; 11:14; 11:16; 11:17; 11:18; 11:22; 11:25; 12:26; 12:27; 14:1; 14:2; 14:3; 14:19; 14:20; 14:21; 14:22; 14:23; 14:29; 14:30; 14:31; 14:32; 14:33; 17:25; 18:2; 18:5; 18:10; 18:11; 18:12; 18:14; 18:15; 18:16; 18:20; 18:21; 18:22; 18:29; 19:1; 19:5; 19:13; 20:7; 20:8; 20:9; 20:10; 20:11; 20:13; 20:15; 20:16; 20:17; 20:20; 20:21; 20:22; 20:23; 23:18; 23:24; 23:37; 24:2; 24:3; 24:4; 24:9)

## Jordan River, Jordan

### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 1:26-28
- John 3:25-26
- Luke 3:3
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 3:13-15
- Matthew 4:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G24460

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:29](#); [10:17](#); [17:22](#); [17:24](#); [19:15](#); [19:17](#); [19:18](#); [19:31](#); [19:36](#); [19:39](#); [19:41](#); [20:2](#); [24:5](#))

## Joseph (OT)

### Facts:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Ephraim](#), [Manasseh](#), [Jacob](#), [Rachel](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **8:4** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **8:5** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **8:7** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **8:9 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **9:2** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 19:20](#))

## joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

### Definition:

#### joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

#### rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:20](#); [Notes](#); [6:12](#))

# Judah

## Facts:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), Jew, [Judea](#), [Jacob](#), Leah)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(**Go back to:** [2 Samuel 3:8](#); [5:5](#); [11:11](#); [12:8](#); [19:15](#); [21:2](#))

## Judea, Judah

### Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, [Judah](#), Judah, Samaria)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G24530

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:18](#); [2:1](#); [2:4](#); [2:7](#); [2:10](#); [2:11](#); [3:10](#); [5:5](#); [19:11](#); [19:14](#); [19:16](#); [19:40](#); [19:41](#); [19:42](#); [19:43](#); [20:2](#); [20:4](#); [20:5](#); [24:1](#); [24:7](#); [24:9](#))

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, law)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment?**”



- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 8:15](#); [22:23](#))

## just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

### Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

## **Bible References:**

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

## **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 19:6](#); [Notes](#))

## Kerethites

### Facts:

The Kerethites were a people group who were probably part of the Philistines. Some versions write this name as “Cherethites.”

- The “Kerethites and Pelethites” were a special group of soldiers from King David’s army who were especially devoted to him as his bodyguards.
- Benaiah, son of Jehoiada, a member of David’s administrative corps, was the leader of the Kerethites and Pelethites.
- The Kerethites remained with David when he had to flee Jerusalem because of Absalom’s revolt.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Absalom](#), [Benaiah](#), [David](#), [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

- Zephaniah 2:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3774

(**Go back to:** [2 Samuel 8:18](#); [15:18](#); [20:7](#); [20:23](#))

## king, kingship

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:4](#); [2:7](#); [2:11](#); [3:3](#); [3:17](#); [3:21](#); [3:23](#); [3:24](#); [3:31](#); [3:32](#); [3:33](#); [3:36](#); [3:38](#); [3:39](#); [4:8](#); [5:2](#); [5:3](#); [5:6](#); [5:11](#); [5:12](#); [5:17](#); [6:12](#); [6:16](#); [6:20](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:18](#); [8:3](#); [8:5](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [9:2](#); [9:3](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [9:9](#); [9:11](#); [9:13](#); [10:1](#); [10:5](#); [10:6](#); [10:19](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [11:8](#); [11:9](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [11:24](#); [12:7](#); [12:30](#); [13:4](#); [13:6](#); [13:13](#); [13:18](#); [13:21](#); [13:23](#);

13:24; 13:25; 13:26; 13:27; 13:29; 13:30; 13:31; 13:32; 13:33; 13:35; 13:36; 13:37; 13:39; 14:1; 14:3; 14:4; 14:5; 14:8;  
14:9; 14:10; 14:11; 14:12; 14:13; 14:15; 14:16; 14:17; 14:18; 14:19; 14:21; 14:22; 14:24; 14:26; 14:28; 14:29; 14:32;  
14:33; 15:2; 15:3; 15:6; 15:7; 15:9; 15:15; 15:16; 15:17; 15:18; 15:19; 15:21; 15:23; 15:25; 15:27; 15:34; 15:35; 16:2; 16:3;  
16:4; 16:5; 16:6; 16:9; 16:10; 16:14; 16:16; 17:2; 17:16; 17:17; 17:21; 18:2; 18:4; 18:5; 18:12; 18:13; 18:18; 18:19; 18:20;  
18:21; 18:25; 18:26; 18:27; 18:28; 18:29; 18:30; 18:31; 18:32; 18:33; 19:1; 19:2; 19:4; 19:5; 19:8; 19:9; 19:10; 19:11;  
19:12; 19:14; 19:15; 19:16; 19:17; 19:18; 19:19; 19:20; 19:22; 19:23; 19:24; 19:25; 19:26; 19:27; 19:28; 19:29; 19:30;  
19:31; 19:32; 19:33; 19:34; 19:35; 19:36; 19:37; 19:38; 19:39; 19:40; 19:41; 19:42; 19:43; 20:2; 20:3; 20:4; 20:21; 20:22;  
21:2; 21:5; 21:6; 21:7; 21:8; 21:14; 22:51; 24:2; 24:3; 24:4; 24:9; 24:20; 24:21; 24:22; 24:23; 24:24)

## kingdom

### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.

- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 5:12](#); [7:12](#); [7:13](#))



## know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 1:5; 1:10; 2:13; 2:26; 3:25; 3:26; 3:37; 3:38; 5:12; 5:24; 7:12; 7:20; 11:1; 11:16; 11:20; 12:22; 12:30; 12:31; 13:9; 14:1; 14:22; 15:11; 16:5; 16:7; 16:11; 17:8; 17:10; 17:19; 18:2; 18:3; 18:29; 19:6; 19:7; 19:19; 19:20; 19:22; 20:8; 21:17; 22:44; 24:2; 24:13)

## Levi, Levite

### Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), [Jacob](#), Leah, Matthew)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 15:24](#))

## life, live, living, alive

### Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

### 1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *\_living\_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:9](#); [1:10](#); [2:27](#); [3:21](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [5:8](#); [11:11](#); [12:3](#); [12:5](#); [12:18](#); [12:21](#); [12:22](#); [14:11](#); [14:14](#); [14:19](#); [15:21](#); [16:11](#); [16:16](#); [17:8](#); [18:14](#); [19:5](#); [19:6](#); [22:47](#))

## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 1:10; 2:5; 2:7; 3:21; 7:18; 7:19; 7:20; 7:22; 7:28; 7:29; 9:9; 9:10; 9:11; 10:3; 11:9; 11:11; 11:13; 12:8; 13:32; 13:33; 14:9; 14:12; 14:15; 14:17; 14:18; 14:19; 14:22; 15:15; 15:21; 16:3; 16:4; 16:9; 18:31; 18:32; 19:19; 19:20; 19:26; 19:27; 19:30; 19:35; 19:37; 20:6; 24:3; 24:21; 24:22)

## love, beloved

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2



- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 12:24](#); [13:1](#); [13:4](#); [13:15](#); [19:6](#))

## Maacah

### Facts:

Maacah (or Maakah) was one of the sons of Abraham's brother Nahor. Other people in the Old Testament also had this name.

- The city of Maacah or Beth Maacah was located in the far north of Israel, in the region occupied by the tribe of Naphtali.
- It was an important city and was attacked by enemies on several occasions.
- Maacah was the name of several women, including the mother of David's son Absalom.
- King Asa removed his grandmother Maacah from being queen because she had promoted Asherah worship.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Asa, Asherah, Nahor, Naphtali, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4601

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:3](#); [10:6](#); [10:8](#))

## mercy, merciful

### Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: compassion, forgive)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Timothy 1:13
- Daniel 9:17
- Exodus 34:6
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 2:13
- Luke 6:35-36
- Matthew 9:27
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Psalms 41:4-6
- Romans 12:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:9** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G16530, G16550, G16560, G24330, G24360, G36280, G36290, G37410, G46980

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 18 General Notes](#))

## messenger

### Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:5](#); [3:12](#); [3:14](#); [3:26](#); [5:11](#); [11:4](#); [12:27](#); [14:20](#))

## might, mighty, mighty works

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), power, [strength](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:19](#); [1:21](#); [1:22](#); [1:25](#); [1:27](#); [10:7](#); [11:15](#); [16:6](#); [17:8](#); [17:10](#); [20:7](#); [22:18](#); [22:26](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:22](#))

## miracle, wonder, sign

### Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, [prophet](#), apostle, sign)

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:26](#))



## Moab, Moabite

### Facts:

The term “Moab” refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named “Moab,” who was the son of Lot’s elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a “Moabite woman” because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Judea](#), Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 1:1-2
- Ruth 1:22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 8:2](#); [23:20](#))

## mourn, mourner, weeping

### Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 13:37](#); [14:2](#); [19:1](#))

## name

### Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 4:2](#); [5:14](#); [5:20](#); [6:2](#); [6:18](#); [7:9](#); [7:23](#); [7:26](#); [8:13](#); [12:24](#); [12:25](#); [12:28](#); [14:7](#); [18:18](#); [20:21](#); [23:8](#); [23:18](#); [23:22](#))

# Nathan

## Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived while David was king over Israel.

- God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
- Nathan rebuked David in spite of the fact that David was the king.
- David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [faithful](#), [prophet](#), [Uriah](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 9:29
- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- Psalm 51:1

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** God sent the prophet **Nathan** to David with this message, "Because you are a man of war, you will not build this Temple for me."
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet **Nathan** to tell David how evil his sin was.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5416, G34810

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 5:14](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:4](#); [7:17](#); [12:1](#); [12:5](#); [12:7](#); [12:13](#); [12:15](#); [12:25](#); [23:36](#))

## nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, [people group](#), [Philistines](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7:23](#); [8:11](#); [22:44](#); [22:50](#))

## **oath, swear, swearing, swear by**

### **Definition:**

The term “oath” in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term “swear” means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word “swear” is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280

(**Go back to:** [2 Samuel 3:9](#); [3:35](#); [19:7](#); [19:23](#); [21:2](#); [21:7](#); [21:17](#))

## olive

### Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 8:11
- James 3:12
- Luke 16:6
- Psalms 52:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G00650, G16360, G16370, G25650

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 14:2](#))



## oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor, dominate

### Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:7
- Ecclesiastes 4:1
- Job 10:3
- Judges 2:18-19
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6031, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G26160, G26690

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 13:2](#))

## peace, peaceful, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 17:3](#); [18:28](#); [18:29](#))

## people, people group

### Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, [nation](#), [tribe](#), world)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 1:4; 1:12; 2:26; 2:27; 2:28; 2:30; 3:18; 3:31; 3:32; 3:34; 3:35; 3:36; 3:37; 5:2; 5:12; 6:2; 6:18; 6:19; 6:21; 7:7; 7:8; 7:10; 7:11; 7:23; 7:24; 8:15; 10:10; 10:12; 10:13; 11:7; 11:17; 12:28; 12:29; 12:31; 13:34; 14:13; 14:15; 15:12; 15:17; 15:23; 15:24; 15:30; 16:6; 16:14; 16:15; 16:18; 17:2; 17:3; 17:8; 17:9; 17:16; 17:22; 17:29; 18:1; 18:2; 18:3; 18:4; 18:5; 18:6; 18:7; 18:8; 18:16; 19:2; 19:3; 19:8; 19:9; 19:39; 19:40; 20:12; 20:15; 20:22; 22:28; 22:44; 22:48; 23:10; 23:11; 24:2; 24:3; 24:4; 24:9; 24:10; 24:15; 24:16; 24:17; 24:21)

## persecute

### Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, church, [oppress](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 1:13-14
- John 5:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 5:10
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 3:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:2** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:4** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G13750, G13760, G13770, G15590, G23470

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:28](#); [20:10](#); [22:38](#); [24:13](#))

## Philistines

### Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, [Ashkelon](#), [David](#), Ekron, Gath, Gaza, [Goliath](#), Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:4
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 56:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:20](#); [3:14](#); [3:18](#); [5:17](#); [5:19](#); [5:22](#); [5:24](#); [5:25](#); [8:1](#); [19:9](#); [21:12](#); [21:15](#); [21:18](#); [21:19](#); [23:11](#); [23:12](#); [23:13](#); [23:14](#); [23:16](#))

## praise, praised, praiseworthy

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 14:25](#))

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360



(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:8](#); [1:13](#); [1:16](#); [2:6](#); [2:20](#); [3:8](#); [3:13](#); [3:28](#); [7:2](#); [7:18](#); [11:5](#); [12:7](#); [13:28](#); [14:18](#); [15:28](#); [18:12](#); [19:35](#); [20:17](#); [20:19](#); [24:12](#); [24:17](#))

## preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [declare](#), good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:8](#); [2:15](#); [2:29](#); [10:17](#); [11:27](#); [12:31](#); [15:22](#); [17:21](#); [17:22](#); [18:23](#); [19:18](#); [19:31](#); [19:39](#); [19:40](#); [19:41](#); [20:14](#); [24:5](#))

## priest, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 8:17](#); [8:18](#); [15:27](#); [15:35](#); [17:15](#); [19:11](#); [20:25](#); [20:26](#))

## prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, [lord](#), power, ruler, Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 1:52

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:8](#); [3:38](#); [4:2](#); [10:3](#); [10:16](#); [10:18](#); [18:1](#); [19:6](#); [19:13](#); [24:2](#); [24:4](#))

## promise, promised

### Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, [fulfill](#), law, vision)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.



- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7:2](#); [Notes](#); [12:25](#); [24:11](#))

## prosper, prosperity, prosperous

### Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well, whether it be physically, morally, emotionally, etc. This term often expresses the idea of being wealthy or successful in life.

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [good](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:6
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:7](#); [11:16](#); [13:28](#); [17:10](#); [22:33](#); [22:40](#); [24:9](#))

## prostrate, bow down, worship

### Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [bow](#), [fear](#), [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), honor)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:2](#); [9:6](#); [9:8](#); [12:20](#); [14:4](#); [14:22](#); [14:33](#); [15:32](#); [16:4](#); [18:21](#); [18:28](#); [24:20](#))

## proud, pride, prideful

### Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, [humble](#), [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 1:12
- Galatians 6:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 1:51

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G13910, G13920, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31730, G51870, G52290, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260

(**Go back to:** [2 Samuel 7:22; 22:51](#))

## punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

### Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- 2 Thessalonians 1:9
- Acts 4:21
- Acts 7:59-60
- Genesis 4:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:6** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G13490, G15560, G15570, G28490, G38110, G50970

(**Go back to:** [2 Samuel 18:16](#))

## Rabbah

### Definition:

Rabbah was the most important city of the Ammonite people.

- In battles against the Ammonites, the Israelites often attacked Rabbah.
- Israel's King David captured Rabbah as one of his last conquests.
- The modern-day city Amman Jordan is now where Rabbah used to be located.

(See also: [Ammon](#), [David](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:1
- 2 Samuel 12:26
- Deuteronomy 3:11
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Jeremiah 49:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7237

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 11:1](#); [12:26](#); [12:27](#); [12:29](#); [17:27](#))



## raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

### Definition:

#### raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 23:8](#); [23:18](#))

## reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation

### Definition:

To “reconcile” and “reconciliation” refer to “make peace” between people who were formerly enemies of each other. “Reconciliation” is that act of making peace

- In the Bible, this term usually refer to Gods reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God’s enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus’ sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “reconcile” could be translated as “make peace” or “restore good relations” or “cause to be friends.”
- The term “reconciliation” could be translated as “restoring good relations” or “making peace” or “causing peaceful relating.”

(See also: [peace](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:19
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Matthew 5:24
- Proverbs 13:17-18
- Romans 5:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2398, H3722, G06040, G12590, G24330, G26430, G26440

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 14 General Notes](#))

## redeem, redeemer, redemption

### Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 4:9](#); [7:23](#); [12:3](#); [14:11](#); [24:24](#))

## reign, rule

### Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:9](#); [3:21](#); [8:15](#); [10:1](#))

## rest, rested, restless

### Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- Something that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 2:3
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0014, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G03720, G03730, G04250, G15150, G18790, G19540, G19810, G22700, G26630, G26640, G26810, G28380, G30620, G45200

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7:1](#); [7:11](#); [17:12](#))

## restore, restoration

### Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:1](#); [1:22](#); [2:26](#); [2:30](#); [3:11](#); [3:16](#); [8:3](#); [Notes](#); [12:23](#); [14:13](#); [14:21](#); [15:8](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [15:25](#); [15:27](#); [15:34](#); [16:3](#); [16:8](#); [19:10](#); [19:11](#); [19:12](#); [19:14](#); [19:37](#); [19:43](#); [20:22](#); [22:21](#); [22:38](#); [23:10](#); [24:13](#))

## return, turn back

### Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshipping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G03440, G03600, G03900, G18770, G18800, G19940, G52900

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:16](#); [3:26](#); [3:27](#); [6:20](#); [9:7](#); [10:5](#); [10:14](#); [11:4](#); [11:15](#); [12:31](#); [15:20](#); [15:25](#); [15:29](#); [16:12](#); [17:3](#); [17:20](#); [18:16](#); [19:15](#); [19:39](#); [22:25](#))



## reward, prize, deserve

### Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of “wages,” which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:6
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 6:35
- Mark 9:40-41
- Matthew 5:11-12
- Matthew 6:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H0866, H0868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G04690, G05140, G05910, G26030, G34050, G34060, G34080

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 4 General Notes](#))

## righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

### Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), law, law, obey, pure, [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 4:11](#); [23:3](#))

## Rimmon

### Facts:

Rimmon was the name of a man and of several places mentioned in the Bible. It was also the name of a false god.

- A man named Rimmon was a Benjamite from the city of Beeroth in Zebulun. This man's sons murdered Ishbosheth, the crippled son of Jonathan.
- Rimmon was a town in the southern part of Judah, in the region occupied by the tribe of Benjamin.
- The "rock of Rimmon" was a place of safety where the Benjamites went to escape from being killed in a battle.
- Rimmon Perez was an unknown location in the Judean wilderness.
- The Syrian commander Naaman spoke of the temple of the false god Rimmon, where the king of Syria worshiped.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Benjamin](#), [Judea](#), Naaman, Syria, Zebulun)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 4:5-7
- Judges 20:45-46
- Judges 21:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7417

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 4:2](#); [4:5](#); [4:9](#))

## robe, robed

### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, [tunic](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0145, H0155, H0899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G17460, G20670, G24400, G47490, G40160, G55110

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:24](#); [13:18](#); [20:8](#))

## sackcloth

### Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: ash, camel, goat, [humble](#), [mourn](#), repent, sign)

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 1:8-10
- Jonah 3:5
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G45260

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 3:31](#))

## sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

### sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

### offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering, peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:21](#))



## Saul (OT)

### Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 9:1
- 2 Samuel 1:1-2
- Acts 13:22
- Psalm 18:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:1** Saul was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**.
- **17:5** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G45490

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:1; 1:2; 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:12; 1:17; 1:21; 1:22; 1:23; 1:24; 2:4; 2:5; 2:7; 2:8; 2:10; 2:12; 2:15; 3:1; 3:6; 3:7; 3:8; 3:10; 3:13; 3:14; 4:1; 4:2; 4:4; 4:8; 4:10; 5:2; 6:16; 6:20; 6:23; 7:15; 9:1; 9:2; 9:3; 9:6; 9:7; 9:9; 12:7; 16:5; 16:8; 19:17; 19:24; 21:1; 21:2; 21:4; 21:6; 21:7; 21:8; 21:11; 21:12; 21:13; 21:14; 22:1](#))

## save, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), Savior)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:3](#); [4:6](#); [19:9](#))

## scribe

### Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: law, Pharisee)

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:5
- Luke 7:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 1:22
- Mark 2:16
- Matthew 5:19-20
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5608, H5613, H7083, G11220

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 8:17](#); [20:25](#))

## seed, semen

### Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [children](#), descendant)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7:12](#))

## seek, search, look for

### Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:17](#); [4:8](#); [4:11](#); [5:17](#); [12:16](#); [16:11](#); [17:3](#); [17:20](#); [20:19](#); [21:1](#); [21:2](#))

## **servant, serve, slave, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), [works](#), [obey](#), [house](#), [lord](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

## Word Data:

### Servant

- Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H0327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256



## Enslave

- Strong's: H3533, G26150

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 1:5; 1:6; 1:13; 2:12; 2:13; 2:14; 2:17; 2:31; 3:18; 3:22; 3:38; 4:12; 6:20; 7:5; 7:8; 7:19; 7:20; 7:21; 7:25; 7:26; 7:27; 7:28; 7:29; 8:2; 8:6; 8:7; 8:11; 8:14; 9:2; 9:6; 9:8; 9:9; 9:10; 9:11; 9:12; 10:2; 10:3; 10:4; 10:19; 11:1; 11:9; 11:11; 11:13; 11:21; 11:24; 12:16; 12:18; 12:19; 12:21; 13:17; 13:18; 13:24; 13:28; 13:29; 13:31; 13:32; 13:34; 13:35; 13:36; 14:7; 14:12; 14:15; 14:16; 14:17; 14:19; 14:20; 14:21; 14:22; 14:30; 14:31; 15:2; 15:8; 15:14; 15:15; 15:18; 15:21; 15:34; 16:1; 16:2; 16:6; 16:11; 16:19; 17:17; 17:18; 17:20; 18:5; 18:7; 18:9; 18:15; 18:29; 18:32; 19:5; 19:6; 19:7; 19:14; 19:17; 19:19; 19:20; 19:26; 19:28; 19:35; 19:36; 19:37; 20:6; 20:17; 21:15; 21:22; 22:44; 24:10; 24:20; 24:21)

## shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, [humble](#), Isaiah, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 10:5](#); [13:13](#))

## silver

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 8:10](#); [8:11](#); [18:11](#); [18:12](#); [21:4](#); [24:24](#))

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), flesh, tax collector)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 11](#) [General Notes](#); [12:13](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [19:20](#); [24:10](#); [24:17](#))

## Solomon

### Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Israel](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 1:7-8
- Matthew 6:29
- Matthew 12:42

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:3** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:4** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G46720

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 5:14](#); [12:24](#))

## son

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: descendant, [ancestor](#), Son of God, sons of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”



- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 1:4; 1:5; 1:12; 1:13; 1:17; 1:18; 2:7; 2:8; 2:10; 2:12; 2:13; 2:15; 2:18; 2:25; 3:2; 3:3; 3:4; 3:14; 3:15; 3:23; 3:25; 3:28; 3:34; 3:37; 3:39; 4:1; 4:2; 4:4; 4:5; 4:8; 4:9; 5:4; 5:13; 6:3; 7:6; 7:7; 7:10; 7:14; 8:3; 8:10; 8:12; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 9:3; 9:4; 9:5; 9:6; 9:9; 9:10; 9:11; 9:12; 10:1; 10:2; 10:3; 10:6; 10:8; 10:10; 10:11; 10:14; 10:19; 11:1; 11:21; 11:27; 12:3; 12:5; 12:9; 12:14; 12:24; 12:26; 12:31; 13:1; 13:3; 13:4; 13:23; 13:25; 13:27; 13:28; 13:29; 13:30; 13:32; 13:33; 13:35; 13:36; 13:37; 14:1; 14:6; 14:11; 14:16; 14:27; 15:27; 15:36; 16:3; 16:5; 16:8; 16:9; 16:10; 16:11; 16:19; 17:10; 17:25; 17:27; 18:2; 18:12; 18:18; 18:19; 18:20; 18:22; 18:27; 18:33; 19:2; 19:4; 19:5; 19:16; 19:17; 19:18; 19:21; 19:22; 19:24; 19:32; 19:35; 20:1; 20:2; 20:6; 20:7; 20:10; 20:13; 20:21; 20:22; 20:23; 20:24; 21:2; 21:6; 21:7; 21:8; 21:12; 21:13; 21:14; 21:17; 21:19; 21:21; 22:45; 22:46; 23:1; 23:9; 23:11; 23:18; 23:20; 23:22; 23:24; 23:26; 23:29; 23:32; 23:33; 23:34; 23:36; 23:37)

## spirit, wind, breath

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person’s spirit was closely related to the concept of a person’s breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person’s attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 22:11](#); [22:16](#); [23:2](#))

## statute

### Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, law, ordinance, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 15:4](#))

## strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,  
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

**(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:7](#); [3:6](#); [10:11](#); [10:12](#); [11:25](#); [13:28](#))**

## sword, swordsmen

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), [tongue](#), word of God)

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:12](#); [1:22](#); [2:16](#); [2:26](#); [3:29](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [15:14](#); [20:8](#); [20:10](#); [24:9](#))

## tabernacle

### Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: [altar](#), altar of incense, [ark of the covenant](#), [temple](#), tent of meeting)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 1:2-5
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 7:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G46330, G46340, G46360, G46380

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7:6](#))



## Tamar

### Facts:

Tamar is the name of several different women in the Old Testament. There are several cities or other places that are named Tamar in the Old Testament.

- Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. She gave birth to Perez who was an ancestor of Jesus Christ.
- One of King David's daughters was named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
- Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
- A city called "Hazezon Tamar" was the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea. There is also a "Baal Tamar," and general references to a place called "Tamar" which may have been different from the cities.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [ancestor](#), [Amnon](#), [David](#), [ancestor](#), [Judah](#), Salt Sea)

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:4
- 2 Samuel 13:2
- 2 Samuel 14:25-27
- Genesis 38:6-7
- Genesis 38:24
- Matthew 1:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1193, H2688, H8412, H8559

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:4](#); [13:5](#); [13:6](#); [13:7](#); [13:8](#); [13:10](#); [13:19](#); [13:20](#); [13:22](#); [13:32](#); [14:27](#))

## temple, house, house of God

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 3:6](#); [4:11](#); [Notes](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [7:6](#))

## testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

### Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60

- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 1:16](#); [22:42](#))

## thresh

### Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, grain, winnow)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:7
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 2:35
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Ruth 3:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G02480

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 6:6](#); [24:16](#); [24:21](#); [24:24](#))

## throne, enthroned

### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, [king](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 3:10; 7:13; 7:16](#))

## tongue, language

### Definition:

The term “tongue” refers to the organ inside a person’s mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean “language” or “speaking.” There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- In the book of Acts, the expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated as “language” or “supernatural language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 3:18
- 2 Samuel 23:2
- Acts 2:26
- Ezekiel 36:3
- Philippians 2:11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3956, G11000, G12580, G20840

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 13:20](#); [19:10](#))



## tremble, stagger, shake

### Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 7:10](#); [22:8](#))

## tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 5:1](#); [7:7](#); [15:2](#); [15:10](#); [18:14](#); [19:9](#); [20:14](#); [24:2](#))

## trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

### Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 4:9](#))

## true, truth

### Definition:

The term “truth” refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- “True” things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- “Truth” means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of “truth” includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 1 John 1:5-7
- 1 John 2:8
- 3 John 1:8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 1:6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 1:18
- James 3:14
- James 5:19
- Jeremiah 4:2
- John 1:9
- John 1:16-18
- John 1:51
- John 3:31-33
- Joshua 7:19-21
- Lamentations 5:19-22
- Matthew 8:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 26:1-3

- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *\_true\_* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *\_true\_* God.
- **31:8** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0199, H0389, H0403, H0529, H0530, H0543, H0544, H0551, H0571, H0935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G02250, G02260, G02270, G02280, G02300, G11030, G33030, G34830, G36890, G41030, G41370

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:6](#); [15:20](#))

## trumpet, trumpeters

### Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 9:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 6:2
- Matthew 24:31

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G45360, G45370, G45380

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:28](#); [6:15](#); [15:10](#); [18:16](#); [20:1](#); [20:22](#))

## trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, faith, [faithful](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 22 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## tunic

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “tunic” referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as “long shirt” or “long undergarment” or “shirt-like garment.” It could also be written in a similar way to “tunic,” with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See Also: [robe](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 3:21-23
- Isaiah 22:21
- Leviticus 8:12-13
- Luke 3:11
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2243, H3801, H6361, G55090

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 13:18](#); [13:19](#); [15:32](#))



## Tyre, Tyrians

### Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [cedar](#), [Israel](#), the sea, Phoenicia, Sidon)

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 3:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G51830, G51840

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 5:11](#); [24:7](#))

# Uriah

## Facts:

Uriah was a righteous man and one of King David's best soldiers. He is often referred to as "Uriah the Hittite."

- Uriah had a very beautiful wife named Bathsheba.
- David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, and she became pregnant with David's child.
- To cover up this sin, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle. Then David married Bathsheba.
- Another man named Uriah was a priest during the time of King Ahaz.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahaz, [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Hittite](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:5
- 2 Samuel 11:3
- 2 Samuel 11:26-27
- Nehemiah 3:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:12** Bathsheba's husband, a man named **Uriah**, was one of David's best soldiers. David called **Uriah** back from the battle and told him to go be with his wife. But **Uriah** refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent **Uriah** back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed.
- **17:13** After **Uriah** was killed, David married Bathsheba.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0223, G37740

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 11:3](#); [11:6](#); [11:7](#); [11:8](#); [11:9](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [11:14](#); [11:15](#); [11:16](#); [11:17](#); [11:21](#); [11:24](#); [11:26](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:15](#); [23:39](#))

## virgin, virginity

### Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Mary](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 1:27
- Luke 1:35
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 25:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:4** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:5** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:1** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 13:2](#); [13:18](#))

## voice

### Definition:

The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression “to hear someone’s voice” can mean either “to hear someone speaking” or “to heed what someone says.”
- The Bible describes God as “speaking” and having a “voice,” even though God doesn’t have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term “voice” sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert....” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#).)

### Bible References:

- John 5:36-38
- Luke 1:42
- Luke 9:35
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G29060, G54560

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 12:18](#); [13:14](#); [19:35](#))

## VOW

### Definition:

A “vow” is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.
- Depending on the context, the term “vow” can be translated as “solemn promise” or “solemn oath” or “promise made to God.”

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 7:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 1:14-16
- Jonah 2:9-10
- Proverbs 7:14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5087, H5088, G21710

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 9 General Notes; Notes](#))

## walk, walked

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 2:29](#); [3:1](#); [3:16](#); [3:24](#); [3:31](#); [5:10](#); [6:4](#); [7:3](#); [7:5](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:9](#); [7:23](#); [8:6](#); [8:14](#); [12:23](#); [13:7](#); [13:13](#); [13:15](#); [13:19](#); [13:24](#); [13:25](#); [13:26](#); [13:34](#); [14:8](#); [14:30](#); [15:7](#); [15:9](#); [15:11](#); [15:12](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [15:22](#); [15:30](#); [16:13](#); [16:17](#); [17:11](#); [17:17](#); [17:21](#); [18:21](#); [18:25](#); [19:24](#); [19:25](#); [24:1](#); [24:12](#))

## watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

### Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 18:12](#); [20:10](#); [22:22](#); [22:44](#))

## wheat

### Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), chaff, grain, [seed](#), [thresh](#), winnow)

### Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Matthew 13:26

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H2406, G46210

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 4:6](#))



## wine, wineskin, new wine

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 13:28](#); [16:1](#))

## wise men, advisor

### Definition:

The term “wise men” simply means people who are wise. In the Bible, however, the term “wise men” often refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king’s royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

### Old Testament

- Sometimes the term “wise men” is explained in the text as “prudent men” or “men with understanding.” This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The “wise men” who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes “wise men” also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

### New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called “magi,” which is often translated as “wise men,” since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “wise men” could be translated using the term “wise” or with a phrase such as “gifted men” or “educated men” or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When the term “wise men” simply means people who are wise, the word “wise” should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, divination, magic, Nebuchadnezzar, ruler, [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 2:1-2
- Daniel 2:10-11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G46800

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 13:3](#); [14:2](#); [14:20](#); [20:16](#))

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 21 General Notes](#))

## work, works, deeds

### Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Acts 2:8-11
- Daniel 4:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 2:15-16
- James 2:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 2:7
- Romans 3:28
- Titus 3:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G20410

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 23 General Notes; 23:20](#))

## wrath, fury

### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 11:20](#))

## wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

### Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or “treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:5
- Luke 6:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 71:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G00910, G00920, G00930, G00950, G02640, G08240, G09830, G09840, G15360, G16260, G16510, G17270, G19080, G25560, G25580, G25590, G26070, G30760, G30770, G37620, G41220, G51950, G51960

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 19:19](#); [24:17](#))

# Yahweh

## Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

## Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Lord](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5

- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:5** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: 2 Samuel 1:12; 1:14; 1:16; 2:1; 2:5; 2:6; 3:9; 3:18; 3:28; 3:39; 4:8; 4:9; 5:2; 5:3; 5:10; 5:12; 5:19; 5:20; 5:23; 5:24; 5:25; 6:2; 6:5; 6:7; 6:8; 6:9; 6:10; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:14; 6:15; 6:16; 6:17; 6:18; 6:21; 7:1; 7:3; 7:4; 7:5; 7:8; 7:11; 7:18; 7:24; 7:25; 7:26; 7:27; 8:6; 8:11; 8:14; 10:12; 11:27; 12:1; 12:5; 12:7; 12:9; 12:11; 12:13; 12:14; 12:15; 12:20; 12:22; 12:24; 12:25; 14:11; 14:17; 15:7; 15:8; 15:21; 15:25; 15:31; 16:8; 16:10; 16:11; 16:12; 16:18; 17:14; 18:19; 18:28; 18:31; 19:7; 19:21; 20:19; 21:1; 21:3; 21:6; 21:7; 21:9; 22:1; 22:2; 22:4; 22:7; 22:14; 22:16; 22:19; 22:21; 22:22; 22:25; 22:29; 22:31; 22:32; 22:42; 22:47; 22:50; 23:2; 23:10; 23:12; 23:16; 23:17; 24:1; 24:3; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 24:14; 24:15; 24:16; 24:17; 24:18; 24:19; 24:21; 24:23; 24:24; 24:25)



## Zadok

### Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [David](#), [Jotham](#), [Nehemiah](#), [reign](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 1 Kings 1:26-27
- 2 Samuel 15:24-26
- Matthew 1:12-14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6659, G45240

(Go back to: [2 Samuel 8:17](#); [15:24](#); [15:25](#); [15:27](#); [15:29](#); [15:35](#); [15:36](#); [17:15](#); [18:19](#); [18:22](#); [18:27](#); [19:11](#); [20:25](#))

## Zion, Mount Zion

### Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: Abraham, [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), Bethlehem, [Jebusites](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:5
- Amos 1:2
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 76:1-3
- Romans 11:26

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

([Go back to: 2 Samuel 5:7](#))

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton

John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook



Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Scott Bayer  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Dan Dennison  
Jamie Duguid  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
John Huffman  
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
Jack Messarra  
Gene Mullen  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Kristy Nickell  
Tom Nickell  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Dean Ropp  
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary  
Leonard Smith  
Suzanna Smith  
Tim Span  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Maria Tijerina  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary  
James Vigen  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher

David Book

Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000

Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary

Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto

Matthew Latham

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics

Richard Joki

Door43 World Missions Community